



Education Act 1993

1993 CHAPTER 35

PART I

RESPONSIBILITY FOR EDUCATION

CHAPTER I

ADMINISTRATION

Secretary of State

1 General duty of Secretary of State

The Secretary of State shall promote the education of the people of England and Wales.

2 Duty in the case of primary, secondary and further education

(1) The Secretary of State shall exercise his powers in respect of those bodies in receipt of public funds which—

- (a) carry responsibility for securing that the required provision for primary, secondary or further education is made in schools, or institutions within the further education sector, in or in any area of England or Wales, or
- (b) conduct schools or institutions within the further education sector in England and Wales,

for the purpose of promoting primary, secondary and further education in England and Wales.

(2) He shall, in the case of his powers to regulate the provision made in schools and institutions within the further education sector in England and Wales, exercise his powers with a view, among other things, to improving standards, encouraging diversity and increasing opportunities for choice.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

Funding authorities for England and Wales

3 Funding Agency for Schools

- (1) There shall be established a body corporate to be known as the Funding Agency for Schools to exercise in relation to England the functions conferred on them.
- (2) The agency shall consist of not less than ten nor more than fifteen members appointed by the Secretary of State, one of whom shall be so appointed as chairman.
- (3) In appointing the members of the agency the Secretary of State shall have regard to the desirability of including—
 - (a) persons who appear to him to have experience of, and to have shown capacity in, the provision of primary or secondary education or to have held, and to have shown capacity in, any position carrying responsibility for the provision of such education,
 - (b) persons who appear to him to have experience of, and to have shown capacity in, the provision of education in voluntary schools, or in grant-maintained schools having foundation governors,
 - (c) persons who appear to him to have experience of, and to have shown capacity in, industrial, commercial or financial matters or the practice of any profession, and
 - (d) persons who appear to him to have experience of, and to have shown capacity in, providing for children with special educational needs.
- (4) Before appointing any member of the agency the Secretary of State shall consult—
 - (a) a body appearing to him to be representative of the Church of England, and
 - (b) a body appearing to him to be representative of the Roman Catholic Church,in matters relating to the provision of education in voluntary schools, or in grant-maintained schools having foundation governors.
- (5) Schedule 1 to this Act has effect in respect of the agency.

4 Schools Funding Council for Wales

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order make provision for the establishment of a body corporate to be known as the Schools Funding Council for Wales to exercise in relation to Wales, as from such date as may be specified in the order, the functions conferred on them.
- (2) The council shall consist of not less than eight nor more than twelve members appointed by the Secretary of State, one of whom shall be so appointed as chairman.
- (3) In appointing the members of the council the Secretary of State shall have regard to the desirability of including—
 - (a) persons who appear to him to have experience of, and to have shown capacity in, the provision of primary or secondary education or to have held, and to have shown capacity in, any position carrying responsibility for the provision of such education,
 - (b) persons who appear to him to have experience of, and to have shown capacity in, industrial, commercial or financial matters or the practice of any profession, and

- (c) persons who appear to him to have experience of, and to have shown capacity in, providing for children with special educational needs.

(4) Schedule 1 to this Act has effect in respect of the council.

5 Meaning of “funding authority” in the Education Acts

- (1) Any reference in the Education Acts to a funding authority—
 - (a) in relation to schools, or local education authority areas, in England is to the Funding Agency for Schools, and
 - (b) in relation to schools, or local education authority areas, in Wales is, subject to subsection (2) below, to the Schools Funding Council for Wales, and in any other context is to the agency or the council.
- (2) Before the Schools Funding Council for Wales begin to exercise their functions, any reference in the Education Acts (other than this Part of this Act) to a funding authority in relation to schools, or local education authority areas, in Wales is to be read as a reference to the Secretary of State.

6 Grants to funding authorities

The Secretary of State may make grants to any funding authority of such amounts and subject to such terms and conditions as he may determine.

Funding authorities: Supplementary

7 Provision of information

- (1) Each funding authority—
 - (a) shall provide the Secretary of State with such information or advice in connection with any function of his relating to the provision of education as he may from time to time require, and
 - (b) may provide the Secretary of State with such information or advice relating to such provision as they think fit.
- (2) The information and advice provided under subsection (1) above shall be provided in such manner as the Secretary of State may from time to time determine.
- (3) A local education authority shall make such reports and returns, and give such information, to the funding authority as the funding authority may require for the purpose of the exercise of their functions.
- (4) A funding authority shall make such reports and returns, and give such information, to any local education authority as the authority may require for the purpose of the exercise of their functions.

8 Value-for-money studies of grant-maintained schools

- (1) Each funding authority shall make arrangements for carrying out such value-for-money studies of grant-maintained schools in England or, as the case may be, Wales as in their opinion are required or as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (2) The authority shall, in particular—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) in forming an opinion as to whether any value-for-money study is required to be carried out in pursuance of this section, have regard to the desirability of value-for-money studies being carried out at regular intervals, and
 - (b) in determining the scope of any value-for-money study to be carried out in pursuance of this section otherwise than on the direction of the Secretary of State, have regard to the scope of any value-for-money study which is being or has recently been carried out.
- (3) In this section “value-for-money study”, in relation to any grant-maintained school, means—
- (a) any examination into the economy, efficiency and effectiveness with which the governing body of the school have, in discharging their functions, used grant made by the authority, and
 - (b) any study designed to improve economy, efficiency and effectiveness in the management or operations of the school.

9 Supervision of funding authorities by the Secretary of State

- (1) In exercising their functions each funding authority shall comply with any directions contained in an order made by the Secretary of State.
- (2) In respect of the exercise by the funding authority of functions in respect of any grant-maintained school, such directions may relate to grant-maintained schools generally or to any class or description of such schools.
- (3) Before making an order under this section, the Secretary of State shall consult the funding authority unless, for reasons of urgency, it is not in his opinion reasonably practicable for him to do so.
- (4) Sections 68 and 99(1) of the Education Act 1944 (powers of Secretary of State where local education authority are acting unreasonably or are in default) shall apply in relation to a funding authority and the functions conferred on them by or under the Education Acts as they apply in relation to local education authorities and the functions conferred on them by or under that Act.
- (5) Subsection (4) above does not prejudice the generality of subsection (1) above.

10 Extension of functions of Audit Commission

- (1) Section 220 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (extension of functions of Audit Commission) is amended as follows.
- (2) At the beginning of subsection (1)(c) there is inserted “the Funding Agency for Schools, the Schools Funding Council for Wales or”.
- (3) After subsection (2)(bb) there is inserted—
 - “(bc) with respect to studies relating to the Funding Agency for Schools, the agency;
 - (bd) with respect to studies relating to the Schools Funding Council for Wales, the council”.
- (4) In subsection (2)(c) after “school,” there is inserted “the funding authority or”.

11 Compulsory purchase of land

In section 17(4) of the Acquisition of Land Act 1981 (statutory undertakers) after paragraph (a) of the definition of “statutory undertakers” there is inserted—

- “(aa) the Funding Agency for Schools,
- (ab) the Schools Funding Council for Wales”.

CHAPTER II

RESPONSIBILITY FOR EDUCATION AT SCHOOL

School places

12 Responsibility for providing sufficient school places

- (1) In respect of the area of any local education authority, the Secretary of State may—
- (a) where he wishes responsibility for providing sufficient school places to be held by the funding authority as well as the local education authority, make an order under this paragraph, and
 - (b) where he wishes that responsibility to be held by the funding authority alone, make an order under this paragraph,
- and such an order may relate to primary education, to secondary education or to both.
- (2) An order under subsection (1) above shall state—
- (a) the local education authority area to which the order applies,
 - (b) whether the order is made under paragraph (a) or (b) of that subsection,
 - (c) the kind (that is primary or secondary) or kinds of education to which the order relates, and
 - (d) the date as from which the order is to have effect.
- (3) No order may be made in respect of any area under subsection (1) above unless—
- (a) in the case of an order under subsection (1)(a) or (b) above, it appears to the Secretary of State that subsection (4) below is, or has at any time been, satisfied, or
 - (b) in the case of an order under subsection (1)(b) above, the local education authority have at any time requested the Secretary of State to make the order and subsection (4)(a) below is, or has at any time been, satisfied,
- in relation to the kind of education to which the order relates or, as the case may be, each of the kinds of education to which the order relates.
- (4) This subsection is satisfied if—
- (a) in the case of an order under subsection (1)(a) above, not less than 10 per cent. of the pupils for whom education is provided in county, voluntary and grant-maintained schools in the area are registered pupils at grant-maintained schools, and
 - (b) in the case of an order under subsection (1)(b) above, not less than 75 per cent. of the pupils for whom education is provided in county, voluntary and grant-maintained schools in the area are registered pupils at grant-maintained schools.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (5) For the purposes of subsection (3) above, the kind of education to which an order relates—
 - (a) where an order is expressed to relate only to primary education, includes any secondary education provided in a primary school and excludes any primary education provided in a secondary school, and
 - (b) where an order is expressed to relate only to secondary education, includes any primary education provided in a secondary school and excludes any secondary education provided in a primary school.
- (6) Schedule 2 to this Act (which shows the effect of an order under this section) shall have effect.
- (7) The kind or kinds of education to which an order under subsection (1)(a) or (b) above relates are referred to in the Education Acts, in relation to such an order, as “relevant education”.

Power to direct admission of child to school

13 Direction to admit child to specified school

- (1) The appropriate authority may give a direction under this section if, in the case of any child in the area of a local education authority, one or both of the following conditions is satisfied in relation to each school which is a reasonable distance from his home and provides suitable education, that is—
 - (a) he has been refused admission to the school, or
 - (b) he is permanently excluded from the school.
- (2) A direction under this section shall specify a school—
 - (a) which is a reasonable distance from the child’s home, and
 - (b) from which the child is not permanently excluded.
- (3) A direction under this section shall, unless it is given on the determination of the Secretary of State under section 14(4) of this Act or by the funding authority, specify a school in the area referred to in subsection (1) above.
- (4) Where a school is specified in a direction under this section, the governing body (and, if the school is a maintained school and the local education authority are not the appropriate authority, the local education authority) shall admit the child to the school.
- (5) Subsection (4) above does not affect any power to exclude from a school a pupil who is already a registered pupil there.
- (6) In this section “suitable education”, in relation to a child, means efficient full-time education suitable to his age, ability and aptitude and to any special educational needs he may have.
- (7) In this section and section 14 of this Act references to the appropriate authority, subject to subsection (8) below, are to the local education authority and references to schools are to maintained schools (other than maintained special schools) and grant-maintained schools.
- (8) Where the education which is suitable education for the child is also education of a kind to which an order under section 12(1)(b) of this Act applies made in respect of

the area referred to in subsection (1) above, references in this section and section 14 of this Act to the appropriate authority are to be read in relation to—

- (a) that child, and
- (b) any maintained school (other than a maintained special school) or grant-maintained school in that area, and any such school in any other area to which an order under section 12(1)(b) of this Act applies which provides education which is relevant education in relation to that order,

as references to the funding authority.

14 Procedure for giving direction

- (1) Before deciding to give a direction under section 13 of this Act, the appropriate authority shall consult—
 - (a) the parent of the child,
 - (b) the governing body of the school they propose to specify in the direction, and
 - (c) the authority (if different) which have a duty to maintain the school or to pay maintenance grant to the governing body (referred to in this section as the “maintaining authority”).
- (2) Where the appropriate authority decide to give such a direction specifying any school they shall, before doing so, serve a notice in writing of their decision on—
 - (a) the governing body and head teacher of the school, and
 - (b) the maintaining authority, if different,and shall not give the direction until the period for referring the matter to the Secretary of State has expired and, if it is so referred, the Secretary of State has made his determination.
- (3) Any body or authority on which a notice is served under subsection (2) above may, within the period of fifteen days beginning with the day on which the notice was served, refer the matter to the Secretary of State and, if they do so, shall inform the appropriate authority.
- (4) On a reference under subsection (3) above the Secretary of State may determine which school is to be required to admit the child and, if he does so, that school shall be specified in the direction.
- (5) Where the appropriate authority give such a direction specifying a school, they shall give notice in writing of that fact to—
 - (a) the governing body and head teacher of the school, and
 - (b) the maintaining authority, if different.

Religious education

15 Procedure for preparing agreed syllabus of religious education

- (1) This section has effect in respect of the area of a local education authority if an order under section 12(1)(b) of this Act applies to the area.
- (2) Within six months of the date of the first such order the local education authority shall reconvene any conference—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) which they have convened for the purpose set out in paragraph 1 or 12 of the Fifth Schedule to the Education Act 1944 (procedure for preparing and bringing into operation an agreed syllabus of religious education) or section 11(8) of the Education Reform Act 1988 (standing advisory councils on religious education), and
 - (b) to which subsection (3) below applies.
- (3) This subsection applies to any conference—
 - (a) which has not made a recommendation under paragraph 9 or 13(2) of that Schedule, and
 - (b) in respect of which the authority have not made a report under paragraph 10 or 13(4) of that Schedule.
- (4) Where a conference is convened (or reconvened) after the date of the order—
 - (a) paragraph 2 of that Schedule shall have effect as if it required the appointment of a committee, in addition to those listed in sub-paragraphs (a) to (d) of that paragraph, consisting of persons representing relevant grant-maintained schools, and
 - (b) section 146 of this Act shall have effect only in relation to grant-maintained schools, or pupils at such schools, at which the syllabus is in use in accordance with section 140(3) of this Act.
- (5) Before appointing a person to represent relevant grant-maintained schools in accordance with subsection (4)(a) above, the local education authority shall take all reasonable steps to assure themselves that he is acceptable as such to the governing bodies of the majority of such schools; but no proceedings under that Schedule shall be invalidated on the ground that the person was not so acceptable unless it is shown that the local education authority failed to take such steps.
- (6) A person so appointed may resign his membership of the committee or may, if in the opinion of the local education authority he ceases to be acceptable as a representative of relevant grant-maintained schools to the governing bodies of the majority of such schools, be withdrawn from the committee by the authority; and where a person resigns or is withdrawn from the committee the authority shall appoint someone in his place in the same manner as that in which they made the original appointment.
- (7) For the purposes of this section, “relevant grant-maintained schools” means those grant-maintained schools within the area of the local education authority to which section 138 or 139 of this Act applies.

16 Standing advisory councils on religious education

- (1) This section has effect in respect of the area of a local education authority if an order under section 12(1)(b) of this Act applies to the area.
- (2) Within six months of the date of the first such order the local education authority shall constitute a new council under section 11 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (standing advisory councils on religious education).
- (3) For the purposes of the constitution required by subsection (2) above (and of any subsequent constitution) that section shall have effect as if—
 - (a) subsection (3)(b) were omitted,

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) subsection (4) required the appointment of a representative group, in addition to those listed in paragraphs (a) to (d) of that subsection, comprising persons representing relevant grant-maintained schools, and
- (c) in subsection (7)—
 - (i) for “that” there were substituted “those”, and
 - (ii) after “to represent the authority” there were inserted “or relevant grant-maintained schools”.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3) above, “relevant grant-maintained schools” means those grant-maintained schools within the area of the local education authority to which section 138 or 139 of this Act applies.
- (5) Before appointing a person to represent relevant grant-maintained schools in accordance with subsection (3) above the local education authority shall take all reasonable steps to assure themselves that he is acceptable as such to the governing bodies of the majority of such schools; but the validity of proceedings shall not be affected because the person was not so acceptable unless it is shown that the local education authority failed to take such steps.
- (6) A person appointed to represent relevant grant-maintained schools in accordance with subsection (3) above may be removed from membership of the council if in the opinion of the local education authority he ceases to be acceptable as such to the governing bodies of the majority of such schools.

Other functions

17 Miscellaneous functions relating to grant-maintained schools

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order provide for any of his functions under the provisions of this Act mentioned in subsection (2) below to be exercisable instead, either generally or in such circumstances as may be specified in the order, by a funding authority.
- (2) Those provisions are—
 - (a) sections 57 and 58 (alterations to instruments and articles of government),
 - (b) section 70 (making and varying joint schemes),
 - (c) section 136 (variation of trust deeds),
 - (d) paragraph 5 of Schedule 4 (transitional powers of governing bodies), and
 - (e) paragraph 14 of Schedule 5 (approval of schemes for payment of allowances to governors).
- (3) An order under this section may—
 - (a) confer or impose such related functions on the funding authority, and
 - (b) provide for Part II of this Act to have effect with such modifications,as the Secretary of State considers necessary or desirable in connection with any transfer of any functions under the provisions of this Act mentioned in subsection (2) above.

18 Functions under agreements relating to CTCs and CCTAs

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order provide—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) for the funding authority to exercise the function of making and receiving payments under all or any of the agreements which he has entered into or may enter into under section 105 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (city technology colleges and city colleges for the technology of the arts), and
 - (b) for any such agreement to have effect accordingly.
- (2) Any sums received by a funding authority in the exercise of those functions shall be paid to the Secretary of State.

19 Functions in respect of grants for certain expenditure due to immigrant population

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order impose on a funding authority the function of paying on his behalf grant under section 11 of the Local Government Act 1966 (grants in respect of special provision for immigrants) payable by him by virtue of section 211(1)(a) or (b) of the Education Reform Act 1988 (grant-maintained schools, CTCs and CCTAs).
- (2) The payments shall be of such amounts and be paid to such persons as the Secretary of State may, in accordance with section 11 of the Local Government Act 1966, determine.

Supplementary

20 Resolution of disputes

Any dispute as to whether any functions are exercisable by a funding authority or a local education authority shall be determined by the Secretary of State.

21 Duty to compile information and conduct research about provision of education

- (1) Each funding authority shall—
 - (a) compile such information, and
 - (b) make such provision for conducting, or assisting the conduct of, research,
 as may be required for the purpose of providing the Secretary of State and local education authorities, in such form and at such times as may be prescribed, with such information relating to the provision of education in any area to which an order under section 12 of this Act applies as may be prescribed.
- (2) Each local education authority shall—
 - (a) compile such information, and
 - (b) make such provision for conducting, or assisting the conduct of, research,
 as may be required for the purpose of providing the Secretary of State and the funding authority, in such form and at such times as may be prescribed, with such information relating to the provision of primary or secondary education in the area of the local education authority as may be prescribed.
- (3) The Secretary of State shall exercise his powers under this section so as to secure, in particular, the provision of information relating to the provision of education for children with special educational needs.

PART II

GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTORY

22 “Grant-maintained schools”

- (1) A school conducted by a governing body incorporated under this Part of this Act, or Chapter IV of Part I of the Education Reform Act 1988, for the purpose of conducting the school shall be known as a grant-maintained school.
- (2) A governing body may be incorporated under this Part of this Act—
 - (a) in pursuance of proposals for the purpose published under section 32 of this Act in relation to an existing school (referred to in this Part of this Act as “proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status”),
 - (b) in pursuance of proposals for the purpose published under section 48 or 49 of this Act in connection with the establishment of a school (referred to in this Part of this Act as “proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school”), or
 - (c) in pursuance of proposals for the purpose published under Chapter IX for two or more existing schools to be conducted as a group by a single governing body.
- (3) A grant-maintained school must be either a secondary school or a primary school.
- (4) Subject to the provisions of this Part of this Act, the funding authority shall pay to the governing body of each grant-maintained school such annual grants as may be required to be paid under Chapter VI.

CHAPTER II

PROCEDURE FOR ACQUISITION OF GRANT-MAINTAINED STATUS

Eligibility

23 Schools eligible for grant-maintained status

- (1) Subject to subsections (2) and (3) below, any county or voluntary school is for the purposes of this Part of this Act eligible for grant-maintained status.
- (2) A county or voluntary school is not eligible for grant-maintained status if proposals by the local education authority to cease to maintain the school have been published under section 12(1)(c) of the Education Act 1980 and either—
 - (a) the proposals have been approved by the Secretary of State under that section, or
 - (b) where the proposals do not require the approval of the Secretary of State, the local education authority have determined to implement the proposals

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

and notified the Secretary of State of their determination in accordance with subsection (8) of that section.

- (3) A voluntary school is not eligible for grant-maintained status if—
- (a) notice of the governing body's intention to discontinue the school has been served under section 14 of the Education Act 1944 and has not been withdrawn, or
 - (b) proposals by the governing body to discontinue the school have been published, and approved by the Secretary of State, under section 13 of the Education Act 1980 (as applied by section 59(2)(b) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992).

24 Duty of governing body to consider ballot on grant-maintained status

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order provide for this section to apply to the governing bodies of all schools, or all schools in England or Wales, which are eligible for grant-maintained status.
- (2) Where this section applies to a governing body of a school, they shall, at least once in every school year, consider whether to hold a ballot of parents on the question of whether grant-maintained status should be sought for the school.
- (3) Subsection (2) above does not apply in respect of any school year if a ballot has been held in accordance with section 28 of this Act in the school year which precedes it.
- (4) The annual report of any governing body to which this section applies shall include—
 - (a) a statement indicating that in the period since their last report the governing body have considered whether to hold a ballot of parents in pursuance of subsection (2) above and giving—
 - (i) particulars of any decisions made by the governing body following such consideration and the date or dates on which they were made, and
 - (ii) if the governing body decided not to hold a ballot, an explanation of the reasons for that decision, or
 - (b) a statement indicating that in that period the governing body have not, for the reasons given in the statement, considered whether to hold a ballot of parents on the question of whether grant-maintained status should be sought for the school.
- (5) In this section, “annual report” means the report prepared under the articles of government for the school in accordance with section 30 of the Education (No.2) Act 1986.

Initiation of procedure

25 Initiation of procedure by governing body

- (1) Where the governing body of a school which is eligible for grant-maintained status decide by a resolution passed at a meeting of that body to hold a ballot of parents on the question of whether grant-maintained status should be sought for the school, they shall—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) secure that the ballot is held in accordance with section 28 of this Act within the period of ten weeks beginning with the date of the resolution, and
 - (b) give notice in writing that the ballot is to be held to the local education authority and, if the school is a voluntary school, to any person holding property on trust for the purposes of the school.
- (2) Notice under subsection (1)(b) above must be given within the period of five days beginning with the date of the resolution; but in determining that period no account shall be taken of—
 - (a) Saturday, Sunday, Good Friday and Christmas Day, or
 - (b) any day which is a bank holiday in England and Wales.
- (3) This section does not apply if in the case of the school in question a ballot has been held in accordance with section 28 of this Act within the period of twelve months ending with the date immediately preceding the date of the resolution, unless the Secretary of State gives consent in writing for a new ballot to be held.

26 Initiation of procedure by parents

- (1) This section applies where the governing body of a school which is eligible for grant-maintained status receive a written request to hold a ballot of parents on the question of whether grant-maintained status should be sought for the school.
- (2) A request under subsection (1) above must be signed (or otherwise endorsed in such manner as the governing body may require) by a number of registered parents of registered pupils at the school equal to at least twenty per cent. of the number of registered pupils at the school; and in this subsection “registered” means shown in the register kept under section 80 of the Education Act 1944 as that register has effect on the date on which the request is received.
- (3) The governing body shall—
 - (a) secure that the ballot is held in accordance with section 28 of this Act within the period of ten weeks beginning with the date on which the request was received, and
 - (b) give notice in writing that the ballot is to be held to the local education authority and, if the school is a voluntary school, to any person holding property on trust for the purposes of the school.
- (4) Notice under subsection (3)(b) above must be given within the period of five days beginning with the date on which the request was received; but in determining that period no account shall be taken of—
 - (a) Saturday, Sunday, Good Friday and Christmas Day, or
 - (b) any day which is a bank holiday in England and Wales.
- (5) Subsection (3) above does not apply if in the case of the school in question a ballot has been held in accordance with section 28 of this Act within the period of twelve months ending with the date immediately preceding the date on which the request is received, unless the Secretary of State gives consent in writing for a new ballot to be held.
- (6) A request under subsection (1) above shall be taken to have been received by a governing body if given or sent to the chairman of the governing body or to the clerk to the governing body.

Information

27 Information as to parents of registered pupils

- (1) Where any registered parent of a registered pupil at a school which is eligible for grant-maintained status so requests and subsection (2) below applies, the governing body shall—
 - (a) make available to the parent for inspection (at all reasonable times and free of charge) at the school a list containing the name and address of every registered parent of a registered pupil at the school, and
 - (b) supply the parent with a copy of the list.
- (2) This subsection applies if the request is made—
 - (a) in connection with any proposal that a ballot should be held in accordance with section 28 of this Act, or
 - (b) where the governing body are under a duty by virtue of section 25, 26 or 30 of this Act to secure that a ballot is held, in connection with the holding of the ballot.
- (3) A governing body shall not disclose to a parent under subsection (1) above the name and address of any person who has requested the governing body in writing not to disclose that information under that subsection; and accordingly the name and address of that person shall be excluded from the list there mentioned.
- (4) A governing body who in pursuance of subsection (1) above supply copies of the list there mentioned may charge such fee as they think fit (not exceeding the cost of supply) in respect of each copy so supplied.

Ballot of parents

28 Ballot of parents

- (1) Where the governing body of a school are under a duty by virtue of section 25 or 26 of this Act to secure that a ballot is held, they shall secure that all necessary arrangements for the ballot are made by such body as may be prescribed.
- (2) The arrangements shall provide for a secret postal ballot.
- (3) The governing body shall secure that the prescribed body take such steps as are reasonably practicable to secure that every person who is eligible to vote in the ballot is—
 - (a) given the prescribed information,
 - (b) informed that he is entitled to vote in the ballot, and
 - (c) given an opportunity to do so.
- (4) The governing body shall make available to every person employed to work at the school for inspection (at all reasonable times and free of charge) at the school a document containing the information required by subsection (3)(a) above to be given to persons eligible to vote in the ballot.
- (5) In determining the arrangements they require to be made by the prescribed body, the governing body shall take into account any guidance given by the Secretary of State

from time to time as to the arrangements he considers appropriate for ballots held in accordance with this section.

- (6) The governing body may promote (otherwise than as part of the arrangements made for the ballot) the case for seeking grant-maintained status for the school and, in doing so, they shall take into account any guidance given by the Secretary of State as to the action he considers appropriate for the purpose.

29 Persons eligible to vote in ballot

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a person is eligible to vote in a ballot held in respect of a school in accordance with section 28 of this Act if he is a registered parent of a registered pupil at the school.
- (2) In subsection (1) above, “registered” means shown in the register kept under section 80 of the Education Act 1944 as that register has effect on the date immediately following the end of the period of fourteen days beginning with the date on which the relevant resolution or request was passed or received by the governing body.
- (3) In subsection (2) above, “the relevant resolution or request” means the resolution under section 25, or request under section 26, of this Act by reference to which the ballot is required to be held (or, where the ballot is a second ballot held by virtue of section 30 of this Act, by reference to which the first ballot was required to be held).

30 Second ballot to be held if insufficient votes cast

- (1) Where in any ballot held in accordance with section 28 of this Act (other than one held by virtue of this section)—
- (a) the total number of votes cast by persons eligible to vote is less than fifty per cent. of the number of persons eligible to vote, or
 - (b) the number of votes cast in favour is the same as the number of votes cast against,
- the governing body shall secure that a second ballot is held within the period of fourteen days beginning with the date immediately after that on which the result of the first ballot is determined.
- (2) In such a case—
- (a) the result of the first ballot shall be disregarded for the purposes of section 32(1) of this Act, and
 - (b) subject to the modifications mentioned in subsection (3) below, section 28 of this Act shall apply as it applies in a case where the governing body of a school are under a duty by virtue of section 25 or 26 of this Act to secure that a ballot is held.
- (3) The modifications are—
- (a) that section 28(3)(a) shall be omitted, and
 - (b) that section 28(4) shall be read as if the information there referred to were the information given for the purposes of the first ballot.

31 Power to declare ballot void for irregularity

- (1) Subsection (2) below applies where it appears to the Secretary of State—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) that any requirements of section 28 or 30 of this Act have been contravened in the case of a ballot held in purported compliance with section 28 of this Act,
 - (b) that the arrangements for a ballot so held did not accord with any guidance given by him for the purposes of section 28 of this Act,
 - (c) that a governing body have acted unreasonably in the discharge of their duties under section 28 or 30 of this Act,
 - (d) that persons other than those eligible to do so have purported to vote in a ballot so held,
 - (e) that ballot papers returned for the purposes of a ballot so held have been marked by persons other than those to whom they were issued or those duly authorised to act on their behalf,
 - (f) that persons who were eligible to vote in a ballot so held have been prevented or hindered from doing so, or from doing so freely in accordance with their own opinions, by any other person, or
 - (g) that voting in a ballot so held is likely to have been influenced to a significant extent by the dissemination of information appearing to the Secretary of State to be to a material extent false or misleading.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by notice in writing given to the governing body—
- (a) declare the ballot void, and
 - (b) require that a fresh ballot be held in accordance with section 28 of this Act before such date as he may specify in the notice.
- (3) Where—
- (a) by a notice under subsection (2) above the Secretary of State requires the fresh ballot to be held in the school year following that in which fell the date which was the effective date for the register used for the ballot he declares void, and
 - (b) the notice specifies a date for the purposes of this subsection,
- section 29(1) of this Act shall have effect in relation to the fresh ballot as if “registered” meant shown in the register kept under section 80 of the Education Act 1944 as that register has effect on the date specified for the purposes of this subsection.

32 Publication of proposals

- (1) Subsection (2) below applies where the result of a ballot held in accordance with section 28 of this Act shows a simple majority of votes cast (by persons eligible to vote in the ballot) in favour of seeking grant-maintained status for the school.
- (2) Before the end of the period of four months beginning with the date on which the result of the ballot is determined, the governing body shall—
 - (a) publish proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status for the school in accordance with any provisions imposed by or under paragraph 1 of Schedule 3 to this Act,
 - (b) publish any notice in respect of the proposals for the time being required by any such provisions, and
 - (c) submit to the Secretary of State a copy of the published proposals.
- (3) References in this Part of this Act to proposals published under this section, in any case where the Secretary of State has modified such proposals in pursuance of this Part of this Act, are to the proposals as so modified.

- (4) For the purposes of this Part of this Act, proposals published under this section shall be regarded as pending in respect of a school until either the proposals are withdrawn or the Secretary of State makes his determination in respect of them.
- (5) Part I of Schedule 3 to this Act (which makes provision supplementing this section) shall have effect.

Approval and implementation of proposals

33 Withdrawal, approval or rejection of proposals

- (1) Proposals published under section 32 of this Act may not be withdrawn except with the consent of the Secretary of State and subject to such conditions as he may impose (which may, in particular, require further proposals to be published under that section within such period as the Secretary of State may specify).
- (2) The Secretary of State—
 - (a) may reject any proposals published under section 32 of this Act, or
 - (b) where a school in respect of which such proposals are made is eligible for grant-maintained status on the date of publication of the proposals, may approve them without modification or, after consultation with the existing governing body, approve them with such modifications as he thinks desirable.
- (3) Where the Secretary of State rejects any proposals published under section 32 of this Act in respect of a school which is eligible for grant-maintained status on the date of his determination, he may require the governing body to publish further proposals under section 32 of this Act within such period as he may specify.
- (4) Where the Secretary of State imposes a requirement under subsection (1) or (3) above for the publication of further proposals, section 32(2) of this Act and Schedule 3 to this Act shall apply as they apply in the case mentioned in section 32(1), but with the following modifications—
 - (a) the reference in section 32(2) to the period of four months beginning with the date on which the result of the ballot is determined shall be taken as a reference to the period specified by the Secretary of State for submission of the further proposals required, and
 - (b) the reference in paragraph 2(1)(a) of Schedule 3 to the ballot shall be read as referring to the last ballot held in accordance with section 28 of this Act in relation to the school before the requirement in question was imposed.

34 Incorporation of governing body

- (1) Where any proposals are approved under section 33 of this Act, then—
 - (a) the persons who, immediately before the proposals are approved, are named in them as initial governors, and
 - (b) the existing head teacher (as a governor ex officio),shall on that date be incorporated as the governing body of the school under the name given in pursuance of paragraph 4(1)(g) of Schedule 3 to this Act.
- (2) Where any proposals are approved under section 33 of this Act, then, in relation to the period beginning with the incorporation date and ending immediately before the date of implementation of the proposals—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) the governing body incorporated under this section are referred to in this Part of this Act as the “new governing body”, and
 - (b) any reference in any enactment or instrument or document to the governing body of the school, other than an express reference to the new governing body or the governing body incorporated under this section or a reference in Chapter V, shall be read as a reference to the existing governing body, not the new governing body.
- (3) On the date of implementation of the proposals—
- (a) the local education authority whose duty it was immediately before that date to maintain the school as a county or voluntary school shall cease to have that duty, and
 - (b) any special agreement relating to the school shall cease to have effect.

35 Exercise of powers before proposed date of implementation

Schedule 4 to this Act (which makes provision in relation to the period after approval and before the date of implementation) shall have effect in relation to any school where proposals are approved under section 33 of this Act.

Supplementary

36 Expenses in connection with proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status

- (1) The Secretary of State may make payments in respect of any expenses incurred by the governing body of a school in exercising, or in connection with the exercise of, their functions under this Chapter.
- (2) Payments under subsection (1) above may be made on such terms as the Secretary of State may determine.
- (3) A local education authority shall not incur any expenditure attributable to any period for the purpose of influencing the outcome of ballots held under section 28 of this Act if the aggregate of the amounts of expenditure for that purpose attributable to the period exceeds or, if that expenditure were incurred, would exceed the limit for that period.
- (4) Regulations may make provision for determining for the purposes of this section—
 - (a) whether expenditure is incurred for the purpose referred to in subsection (3) above,
 - (b) the amount of any expenditure,
 - (c) the period to which expenditure is to be attributed, and
 - (d) the limit for any period.
- (5) Regulations may require each local education authority—
 - (a) to keep in accordance with regulations, and any directions contained in an order made by the Secretary of State, a separate account of the expenditure incurred for the purpose referred to in subsection (3) above, and
 - (b) to prepare in respect of such periods as may be prescribed a statement of account and, if the Secretary of State so requests, send each statement to him before the end of such period as may be prescribed.

37 Chapter II: interpretation, etc

- (1) This section applies in relation to proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status and to the school to which they relate.
- (2) References to the date of implementation of the proposals—
 - (a) in relation to a school in respect of which proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status are required to be published under section 32 of this Act, are to the date specified in accordance with regulations under section 28(3)(a) of this Act as the proposed date of implementation in the information given to persons eligible to vote in the originating ballot, and
 - (b) in any other case, are to the date specified in the proposals as the proposed date of implementation.
- (3) In subsection (2)(a) above, “the originating ballot”—
 - (a) where section 32(1) of this Act applies, means the ballot by reference to which it applies, and
 - (b) where the proposals are required to be published by virtue of a requirement imposed by the Secretary of State under section 33(1) or (3) of this Act, means the last ballot held in accordance with section 28 of this Act in relation to the school before that requirement was imposed.
- (4) “The relevant particulars”, in relation to a proposed initial governor, means—
 - (a) his name and address,
 - (b) whether he is to be a parent, teacher, first, foundation or sponsor governor,
 - (c) if he is to be a parent or teacher governor, the term of office that applies in his case under paragraph 10 of Schedule 5 to this Act, and
 - (d) if he is to be a first, foundation or sponsor governor, the term of office proposed for him in accordance with that paragraph or, in the case of a foundation governor who is to hold office *ex officio*, the fact that he is to do so.
- (5) “The incorporation date” means the date on which the governing body are incorporated.

CHAPTER III

PROPERTY, STAFF AND CONTRACTS

Transfer of property and staff, etc.

38 Transfer of property etc

- (1) Subject to subsection (3) below, where in relation to any school proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status are approved—
 - (a) the property, rights and liabilities mentioned in subsection (2) below of any local authority, and
 - (b) any property, rights and liabilities of the existing governing body,shall on the date of implementation of the proposals be transferred to, and by virtue of this Act vest in, the governing body incorporated under Chapter II.
- (2) The property, rights and liabilities referred to in subsection (1)(a) above are—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) all land or other property which, immediately before the date of implementation of the proposals, was property used or held by the authority for the purposes of the school, and
 - (b) all rights and liabilities subsisting immediately before the date of implementation of the proposals which were acquired or incurred by the authority for those purposes.
- (3) Subsection (1) above shall not apply to rights and liabilities under any contract of employment; and subsection (1)(a) above shall not apply to—
 - (a) any land or other property vested in a local authority as trustees,
 - (b) any property, rights or liabilities excluded under subsection (5) or (6) below,
 - (c) any liability of a local authority in respect of the principal of, or any interest on, any loan, or
 - (d) any liability of a local authority in respect of compensation for premature retirement of any person formerly employed by them or by any governing body of the school.
- (4) Any land or other property of a local authority excluded by virtue of subsection (3) (a) above from transfer to the governing body shall, on the date of implementation of the proposals, be transferred to, and by virtue of this Act vest in, the first governors of the school on the trusts applicable immediately before that date under any trust deed regulating the use of that land or other property for the purposes of the school.
- (5) If before the date of implementation of the proposals—
 - (a) the new governing body and the local authority have agreed in writing to exclude any property, and
 - (b) the Secretary of State has given his written approval of the agreement,
 the property, and any rights or liabilities relating to it, shall be excluded.
- (6) If in default of agreement under subsection (5) above—
 - (a) the new governing body or the local authority have applied to the Secretary of State to exclude any property, and
 - (b) the Secretary of State has by order directed its exclusion,
 the property, and any rights or liabilities relating to it, shall be excluded.
- (7) An agreement under subsection (5) above may provide for the property to be used for the purposes of the school acquiring grant-maintained status on such terms as may be specified in or determined in accordance with the agreement; and directions under subsection (6) above—
 - (a) may confer any rights or impose any liabilities that could have been conferred or imposed by such an agreement, and
 - (b) shall have effect as if contained in such an agreement.
- (8) For the purposes of this section, any interest in a dwelling-house which, immediately before the date of implementation of the proposals, is used or held by a local authority for occupation by a person employed to work at the school shall be treated as an interest used or held for the purposes of the school.
- (9) This section is subject to section 198 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (which with Schedule 10 to that Act makes further provision in relation to transfers of property, rights and liabilities), and references in that Schedule as applied by virtue of this subsection to the transfer date are to the date of implementation of the proposals.

39 Transfer of staff

- (1) This section applies to any school where proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status have been approved in relation to the school; and, subject to subsection (3) below, applies to any person who—
 - (a) if the school is an aided school, is immediately before the date of implementation of the proposals employed by the governing body, or
 - (b) immediately before the date of implementation of the proposals—
 - (i) is employed by the local education authority to work solely at the school, or
 - (ii) is employed by the local education authority to work at the school and is designated for the purposes of this section by an order made by the Secretary of State.
- (2) A person employed by a local education authority in connection with the provision of meals shall not be regarded for the purposes of subsection (1)(b) above as employed to work solely at a school unless the meals are provided solely for consumption by persons at the school.
- (3) This section does not apply to—
 - (a) any person employed as mentioned in subsection (1) above whose contract of employment terminates on the day immediately preceding the date of implementation of the proposals, or
 - (b) any person employed as mentioned in subsection (1)(b) above who before that date—
 - (i) has been appointed or assigned by the local education authority to work solely at another school as from that date, or
 - (ii) has been withdrawn from work at the school with effect as from that date.
- (4) A person who before the date of implementation of the proposals has been appointed or assigned by the local education authority to work at the school as from that date shall be treated for the purposes of this section as if he had been employed by the authority immediately before that date to do such work at the school as he would have been required to do on or after that date under his contract of employment with the authority.
- (5) In subsections (6) and (7) below, “former employer”—
 - (a) in relation to a person to whom this section applies by virtue of subsection (1) (a) above, means the governing body of the school immediately before the date of implementation of the proposals, and
 - (b) in relation to a person to whom this section applies by virtue of subsection (1) (b) above, means the local education authority.
- (6) The contract of employment between a person to whom this section applies and his former employer shall have effect from the date of implementation of the proposals as if originally made between him and the governing body of the grant-maintained school.
- (7) Without prejudice to subsection (6) above—
 - (a) all the former employer’s rights, powers, duties and liabilities under or in connection with the contract of employment shall by virtue of this section be

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

transferred to the governing body of the grant-maintained school on the date of implementation of the proposals, and

- (b) anything done before that date by or in relation to the former employer in respect of that contract or the employee shall be deemed from that date to have been done by or in relation to that governing body.
- (8) Subsections (6) and (7) above are without prejudice to any right of an employee to terminate his contract of employment if a substantial change is made to his detriment in his working conditions, but no such right shall arise by reason only of the change in employer effected by this section.
- (9) An order under this section may designate a person either individually or as a member of a class or description of employees.

Effect of pending procedure for acquisition of grant-maintained status on property disposals, etc.

40 “Pending” procedure for acquisition of grant-maintained status

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter the procedure for acquisition of grant-maintained status is pending in relation to a school when it has been initiated in relation to the school on any occasion and not terminated (as initiated on that occasion).
- (2) For those purposes, that procedure is to be regarded as initiated in relation to a school on any occasion—
 - (a) on receipt by the local education authority of notice of a meeting of the governing body at which a motion for a resolution to hold a ballot of parents on the question of whether grant-maintained status should be sought for the school is to be considered (not being a case falling within section 25(3) of this Act), or
 - (b) where the governing body have received a request under section 26(1) of this Act, on receipt by the local education authority of notice under subsection (3) (b) of that section.
- (3) For those purposes, that procedure, as initiated on any occasion, is to be regarded as terminated—
 - (a) when initiated as mentioned in subsection (2)(a) above, if—
 - (i) the meeting is not held,
 - (ii) the meeting is held but the motion is not moved or, though the motion is moved, the resolution is not passed, or
 - (iii) the resolution is passed but the result of the ballot to which the notice under section 25(1)(b) of this Act relates does not show a majority in favour of seeking grant-maintained status for the school,
 - (b) when initiated as mentioned in subsection (2)(b) above, if the result of the ballot to which the notice under section 26(3)(b) of this Act relates does not show a majority in favour of seeking grant-maintained status for the school,
 - (c) if proposals which by reference to the result of a ballot to which a notice under section 25(1)(b) or 26(3)(b) of this Act relates are required to be published under section 32 of this Act, or any proposals required in substitution for those proposals, are rejected by the Secretary of State or withdrawn, or
 - (d) on the date of implementation of such proposals.

- (4) Where section 30 of this Act applies in the case of such a ballot, the references in subsection (3) above to the result of that ballot shall be read as references to the result of the second ballot required by that section.
- (5) The reference in subsection (3) above to proposals required in substitution for any proposals (“the original proposals”) required to be published by reference to the result of a ballot is to any proposals required to be published by virtue of section 33(1) or (3) of this Act on withdrawal or (as the case may be) rejection of—
 - (a) the original proposals, or
 - (b) any further proposals required to be published by virtue of section 33(1) or (3) of this Act in respect of the school without a further ballot.
- (6) Proposals published under section 32 of this Act shall not be treated for the purposes of subsection (3)(c) above as rejected in any case where the Secretary of State imposes a requirement under section 33(3) of this Act or as withdrawn in any case where he imposes a requirement under section 33(1) of this Act for the publication of further proposals.

41 Control of disposals of land

- (1) During any period when the procedure for acquisition of grant-maintained status is pending in relation to a school, a local authority shall not—
 - (a) dispose of any land used wholly or partly for the purposes of the school, or
 - (b) enter into a contract to dispose of any such land,except with the required consent.
- (2) Subsection (1) above does not apply in relation to a disposal which is made in pursuance of a contract entered into, or an option granted, before the procedure for acquisition of grant-maintained status was initiated in relation to the school.
- (3) Where proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status are approved, the procedure for acquisition of grant-maintained status is not to be treated as terminated for the purposes of this section and section 42 of this Act in relation to any land where agreement is required to be reached under paragraph 2(1) of Schedule 10 to the Education Reform Act 1988 (identification of property, etc.) on any matter relating to that land until the date on which that matter is finally determined.
- (4) In the case of a disposal made or contract entered into after proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status have been approved, the required consent—
 - (a) if it is agreed between the local authority and the new governing body that the value of the land in question does not exceed £6,000, is the consent of the new governing body, and
 - (b) if paragraph (a) above does not apply, is the consent of both the new governing body and the Secretary of State.
- (5) In any other case the required consent for any proposed disposal (and for any contract to make it) is the consent of both the existing governing body and the Secretary of State.
- (6) A disposal or contract shall not be invalid or void by reason only that it has been made or entered into in contravention of this section; and (subject to section 42 of this Act) a person acquiring land, or entering into a contract to acquire land, from a

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

local authority shall not be concerned to enquire whether any consent required by this section has been given.

- (7) This section has effect notwithstanding anything in section 123 of the Local Government Act 1972 (general power to dispose of land) or in any other enactment; and the consent required by this section shall be in addition to any consent required by subsection (2) of that section or by any other enactment.
- (8) In this section—
 - (a) references to disposing of land include granting or disposing of any interest in land, and
 - (b) references to entering into a contract to dispose of land include granting an option to acquire land or such an interest.
- (9) Where a proposed disposal forms part of a proposed series of transactions, all disposals forming part of that series shall be treated as one disposal for the purposes of this section.
- (10) The Secretary of State may by order substitute for the sum specified in subsection (4) above (whether as originally enacted or as previously amended by an order under this subsection) such sum as may be specified in the order.

42 Wrongful disposals of land

- (1) This section applies where—
 - (a) proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status in respect of a school have been approved, and
 - (b) a local authority have made a disposal, or have entered into a contract, in contravention of section 41(1) of this Act.
- (2) In the case of a contract which consists of granting an option to acquire any land or interest in land, the Education Assets Board may by notice in writing served on the option holder repudiate the option at any time before it is exercised.
- (3) In the case of a contract to dispose of any land or to grant or dispose of any interest in land, the Education Assets Board may by notice in writing served on the other party to the contract, at any time before the conveyance or grant of the land or any interest in land to which it relates is completed or executed, repudiate the contract.
- (4) A repudiation under subsection (2) or (3) above shall have effect as if—
 - (a) where it is made after the date of implementation of the proposals, the local authority (and not the governing body) were party to the contract, and
 - (b) the repudiation were made by the local authority.
- (5) In the case of a disposal which consists in granting or disposing of any interest in land (whether or not in pursuance of any earlier contract falling within subsection (2) or (3) above) the Education Assets Board may be authorised by the Secretary of State to purchase compulsorily the interest in land which was the subject of the disposal.
- (6) The Acquisition of Land Act 1981 shall apply in relation to the compulsory purchase of land under subsection (5) above as if references in sections 12 and 13 of that Act to every owner of the land included references to the local authority concerned.

- (7) On completion of a compulsory purchase under that subsection of any interest in land, the Education Assets Board shall convey that interest to the governing body incorporated under Chapter II.
- (8) Where the Education Assets Board acquire any interest in land by a compulsory purchase under subsection (5) above the Board shall be entitled to recover from the local authority concerned an amount equal to the aggregate of—
 - (a) the amount of compensation agreed or awarded in respect of that purchase, together with any interest payable by the Board in respect of that compensation in accordance with section 11 of the Compulsory Purchase Act 1965 or section 52A of the Land Compensation Act 1973, and
 - (b) the amount of the costs and expenses incurred by the Board in connection with the making of the compulsory purchase order.
- (9) Section 41(8) of this Act applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of that.

43 Control of contracts

- (1) Where the procedure for acquisition of grant-maintained status is pending in relation to any school, this section applies to any contract which, if the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status were implemented, would or might bind the governing body incorporated under Chapter II.
- (2) Except with the appropriate consent, a local authority shall not enter into a contract to which this section applies.
- (3) In the case of a contract entered into after the proposals have been approved by the Secretary of State, the appropriate consent is that of the new governing body.
- (4) In relation to any other contract, the appropriate consent is—
 - (a) the consent of the existing governing body, and
 - (b) if (on the assumption in subsection (1) above) the contract will require the governing body incorporated under Chapter II to make payments amounting in aggregate to £15,000 or more, the consent of the Secretary of State.
- (5) Any consent for the purposes of this section may be given either in respect of a particular contract or in respect of contracts of any class or description and either unconditionally or subject to conditions.
- (6) A contract shall not be void by reason only that it has been entered into in contravention of this section and (subject to section 44 of this Act) a person entering into a contract with a local authority or governing body shall not be concerned to enquire whether any consent required by this section has been given or any conditions of such a consent have been complied with.
- (7) Where there is an obligation under a contract to which this section applies to provide any benefit other than money, subsection (4)(b) above shall apply as if the obligation were to pay a sum of money corresponding to the value of the benefit to the recipient.
- (8) This section does not apply to—
 - (a) a works contract (within the meaning of Part III of the Local Government, Planning and Land Act 1980) which is entered into in accordance with section 7 of that Act,

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) a works contract (within the meaning of Part I of the Local Government Act 1988) which is entered into in accordance with section 4 of that Act,
 - (c) a contract to dispose of land (within the meaning of section 41 of this Act) or to grant an option to acquire land or an interest in land, or
 - (d) a contract of employment.
- (9) The Secretary of State may by order substitute for the sum specified in subsection (4) above (whether as originally enacted or as previously amended by an order under this subsection) such sum as may be specified in the order.

44 Wrongful contracts

- (1) This section applies where—
- (a) proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status in respect of a school have been approved, and
 - (b) a local authority have entered into a contract to which section 43 of this Act applies in contravention of that section.
- (2) The Education Assets Board may by notice in writing served on the other party to the contract repudiate the contract at any time before it is performed.
- (3) A repudiation under subsection (2) above shall have effect as if—
- (a) where it is made after the date of implementation of the proposals, the local authority (and not the governing body) were party to the contract, and
 - (b) the repudiation were made by the local authority.

45 Restriction on change of purpose for which property used or held

- (1) During any period when the procedure for acquisition of grant-maintained status is pending in relation to a school, a local authority shall not, in relation to any land or other property of the authority used or held for the purposes of the school, take without the required consent any action by which the land or other property ceases to any extent to be so used or held.
- (2) In the case of anything done after proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status have been approved, the required consent is that of the new governing body.
- (3) In any other case the required consent is that of both the existing governing body and the Secretary of State.
- (4) If in the case of any school—
- (a) proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status are approved, and
 - (b) a local authority have, in relation to any property, taken any action in contravention of subsection (1) above,
- the provisions relating to the transfer of property shall have effect as if, immediately before the date of implementation of the proposals in relation to the school, the property were used or held by the authority for the purposes for which it was used or held when the procedure for acquisition of grant-maintained status was initiated.
- (5) In this section—
- (a) “the provisions relating to the transfer of property” means section 38 of this Act and section 198 of, and Schedule 10 to, the Education Reform Act 1988, and

- (b) the references to taking action include appropriating property for any purpose.

46 Restriction on staff changes

- (1) During any period when the procedure for acquisition of grant-maintained status is pending in relation to a school, the local education authority shall not do any of the things mentioned in subsection (2) below without the required consent.
- (2) Those things are—
 - (a) the appointment of a person to fill a vacancy in a post which is part of the complement of the school or to work solely at the school in any other post,
 - (b) the dismissal (otherwise than under section 27(5) or 28(4) of the Education Act 1944 (special provisions as to religious education in voluntary schools)) of a person to whom subsection (3) below applies, and
 - (c) the withdrawal of such a person from work at the school (otherwise than by dismissing him).
- (3) This subsection applies to any person who is employed—
 - (a) in a post which is part of the complement of the school, or
 - (b) to work solely at the school in any other post.
- (4) The references in this section to the complement of the school are to the complement of teaching and non-teaching posts determined by the local education authority for the school under section 34 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (determination of staff complement for schools).
- (5) In the case of anything done after proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status have been approved, the required consent is that of the new governing body.
- (6) In any other case the required consent is that of both the existing governing body and the Secretary of State.

Supplementary

47 Supplementary provisions about transfers

- (1) No duty of a local education authority under paragraph 6 of the First Schedule to the Education Act 1946 (maintenance of voluntary schools) to convey their interest in any site or buildings to the trustees of a school shall be affected by the school subsequently becoming a grant-maintained school.
- (2) Where such a duty is continued by virtue of subsection (1) above, then, in connection with the site in question, paragraphs 6 to 9 of that Schedule shall continue to apply after the school becomes a grant-maintained school as if it were a controlled school or, as the case may be, an aided or special agreement school.
- (3) Where any such duty as is referred to in subsection (1) above, or imposed by section 284(1) of this Act, applies in relation to a school, then—
 - (a) if it applies immediately before the date of implementation of proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status, section 38(1)(a) of this Act shall not apply to, or to any interest in, the site or buildings or, as the case may be, the premises to be conveyed, and

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) if it applies at a time when the procedure for acquisition of grant-maintained status is pending, section 41 of this Act shall not apply to disposing, or entering into a contract to dispose, of the site or buildings or, as the case may be, the premises to be conveyed.
- (4) Where immediately before the date of implementation of proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status there is an agreement relating to any site or buildings made under paragraph 3 or 4 of that Schedule, section 38(1)(a) of this Act shall not apply to any rights or liabilities of any local authority under the agreement; and any directions given before that date under paragraph 5 of that Schedule, so far as they relate to the governing body of the school, shall have effect on or after that date as if they related to the governing body incorporated under section 34 of this Act.
- (5) In section 197(7) of the Education Reform Act 1988 (duty of local education authority to give information to Education Assets Board), after “local education authority” there is inserted “and any governing body of a maintained or grant-maintained school” and for “this Act” there is substituted “the Education Acts 1944 to 1993”.
- (6) In paragraph 61 of Schedule 8 to the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (new procedure, instead of paragraph 3 of Schedule 10 to the 1988 Act, where no agreement has been reached about transfers of assets under that Schedule and the transfer relates to the higher education sector), for “by virtue of section 126 or 130 and in such a case” there is substituted “and”.
- (7) In paragraph 1(1) of Schedule 10 to the Education Reform Act 1988 (apportionment of property held), after “held” there is inserted “or used”.
- (8) In paragraph 4(1) of that Schedule (registered land) for “by virtue of section 126 or 130” there is substituted “to which this Schedule applies”.
- (9) In that Schedule, for “local education authority” in each place where it appears there is substituted “local authority”.

CHAPTER IV

ESTABLISHING NEW GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

Proposals for establishment of new grant-maintained school

48 Proposals by funding authority

- (1) This section has effect in respect of the area of a local education authority if an order under section 12(1) of this Act applies to the area.
- (2) The funding authority may establish grant-maintained schools for the purpose of providing relevant education.
- (3) Where the funding authority intend to establish a grant-maintained school, they shall—
 - (a) publish proposals for that purpose in such manner as may be prescribed, and
 - (b) submit a copy of the published proposals to the Secretary of State.
- (4) Before publishing any proposals under this section the funding authority shall consult such persons as appear to them to be appropriate; and in discharging their duty under

this subsection, the funding authority shall have regard to any guidance given to them from time to time by the Secretary of State.

49 Proposals by promoters

- (1) Where any persons (referred to in this Part of this Act as “promoters”) propose to establish a grant-maintained school, they shall—
 - (a) publish proposals for that purpose in such manner as may be prescribed, and
 - (b) submit a copy of the published proposals to the Secretary of State.
- (2) Before publishing any proposals under this section the promoters shall consult—
 - (a) the funding authority, and
 - (b) such other persons as appear to them to be appropriate;and in discharging their duty under this subsection, the promoters shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (3) A local education authority may not establish any grant-maintained school.
- (4) In relation to England this section has effect at any time after the funding authority have begun to exercise their functions.

50 Provisions supplementary to sections 48 and 49

- (1) Part II of Schedule 3 to this Act (which makes provision supplementing sections 48 and 49) shall have effect.
- (2) Subsection (3) below applies where promoters propose to establish a grant-maintained school in place of an existing independent school which it is proposed to discontinue on or before the date of implementation of the proposals.
- (3) Where this subsection applies, the proposals published by the promoters under section 49 of this Act shall, in addition to the matters required to be specified by virtue of paragraph 7 of Schedule 3 to this Act—
 - (a) specify any arrangements proposed to be made by the promoters for land and other property held for the purposes of the existing independent school to be held for the purposes of the grant-maintained school, and
 - (b) state whether there is a trust deed or other instrument relating to the existing independent school.
- (4) References in this Part of this Act to proposals published under section 48 or 49 of this Act, in any case where the Secretary of State has modified such proposals in pursuance of this Part of this Act, are to the proposals as so modified.
- (5) No proposals may be published under section 48 or 49 of this Act for a school which may provide any education which is neither primary nor secondary education unless it is—
 - (a) part-time education suitable to the requirements of persons of any age over compulsory school age, or full-time education suitable to the requirements of persons who have attained the age of nineteen years, or
 - (b) part-time education suitable to the requirements of junior pupils.

Approval and implementation of proposals

51 Approval, adoption or rejection of proposals

- (1) Proposals published under section 48 of this Act require the approval of the Secretary of State if—
 - (a) he gives notice to that effect to the funding authority within two months after the submission to him of the published proposals,
 - (b) objections have been made under paragraph 10 of Schedule 3 to this Act within the period allowed under that paragraph (unless all objections so made have been withdrawn in writing within that period), or
 - (c) the proposals name a sponsor of the school.
- (2) Proposals published under section 49 of this Act require the approval of the Secretary of State.
- (3) Where under subsection (1) or (2) above any proposals require the approval of the Secretary of State, he may reject them, approve them without modification or, after consulting the funding authority and, in the case of proposals under section 49 of this Act, the promoters, approve them with such modifications as he thinks desirable.
- (4) In relation to Wales, subsection (3) above shall have effect before the Schools Funding Council for Wales begin to exercise their functions with the omission of the reference to consulting the funding authority.
- (5) In the case of proposals published under section 48 of this Act, particulars in respect of the proposed premises of the school prepared under paragraph 12 of Schedule 3 to this Act must be adopted by the funding authority.
- (6) In the case of proposals published under section 49 of this Act, particulars in respect of the proposed premises of the school submitted under paragraph 12 of Schedule 3 to this Act require the approval of the funding authority.
- (7) Where proposals published under section 48 of this Act do not require the approval of the Secretary of State, the funding authority shall determine whether to adopt the proposals.
- (8) The funding authority shall—
 - (a) make any determination under subsection (7) above not later than four months after the publication of the proposals, and
 - (b) give notice in writing to the Secretary of State of their determination.

52 Implementation of proposals

- (1) Where any proposals are approved or adopted under section 51 of this Act, the persons who are appointed in accordance with regulations to be the initial first or (as the case may be) foundation governors shall on the incorporation date be incorporated as the governing body of the school under the name given in pursuance of paragraph 7(1)(f) of Schedule 3 to this Act.
- (2) Where any proposals published under section 48 of this Act are so approved or adopted, the funding authority shall implement the proposals or, if under this subsection the Secretary of State modifies the proposals at their request, the proposals as modified.

- (3) Where any proposals published under section 49 of this Act are so approved, the promoters shall implement the proposals or, if under this subsection the Secretary of State modifies the proposals at their request, the proposals as modified.
- (4) Proposals required to be implemented under this section shall be implemented in accordance with any particulars adopted or approved under section 51(5) or (6) of this Act.

53 Exercise of powers before proposed date of implementation, and payment of grant

- (1) Where proposals have been approved or adopted under section 51 of this Act, the powers conferred on the governing body by or under this Part of this Act shall, until the date of implementation of the proposals, be exercised only for the purpose of or in connection with the conduct of the school on or after that date.
- (2) In the case of proposals under section 49 of this Act, the funding authority may at any time after the incorporation date make grants to the governing body in respect of the provision of premises for the school.
- (3) So far as the amount of any grant under subsection (2) above relates to the provision of a site for the school or of school buildings, it shall not exceed 85 per cent. of the sums expended by the governing body in respect of the provision of the site and buildings in question.
- (4) Where proposals have been approved or adopted under section 51 of this Act, then, in respect of the period beginning with the incorporation date and ending immediately before the date of implementation of the proposals—
 - (a) Chapter VI shall not apply, but
 - (b) the funding authority may make grants to the governing body (other than grants in respect of the provision of premises for the school) in respect of expenditure incurred or to be incurred by that body.
- (5) The funding authority may impose on a governing body to whom a grant is made under subsection (2) or (4) above such requirements as they may from time to time determine (whether before, at or after the time when the grant is made).
- (6) Such requirements may, in particular, if any conditions specified in the requirements are satisfied, require the payment to the funding authority of the whole or any part of the following amount.
- (7) That amount is—
 - (a) the amount of the payments made in respect of the grant, or
 - (b) so much of the value of any premises or equipment in respect of which the grant was paid as is determined in accordance with the requirements to be properly attributable to the payment of such grant,whichever is the greater.
- (8) No such requirement as is referred to in subsection (6) above may be imposed where any grant is made under subsection (2) above in respect of the provision of premises for the school if any freehold interest in the premises in respect of which the grant is paid is, or is to be, held on trust for the purposes of the school.
- (9) In this section “site” does not include playing fields.

Supplementary

54 Chapter IV: interpretation

In relation to proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school or to a school established in pursuance of such proposals—

- (a) the date specified in the proposals as the proposed incorporation date is referred to in this Part of this Act as the “incorporation date”, and
- (b) the date specified in the proposals as the proposed date of implementation is referred to in this Part of this Act as the “date of implementation of the proposals”.

CHAPTER V

GOVERNMENT, CONDUCT ETC. OF GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

The governing instruments

55 Constitution of governing body and conduct of school

- (1) For every governing body of a grant-maintained school there shall be—
 - (a) an instrument (to be known as the instrument of government) providing for the constitution of the governing body, and
 - (b) an instrument (to be known as the articles of government) in accordance with which the school is to be conducted.
- (2) The instrument and articles of government—
 - (a) shall comply with any requirements imposed by or under this Chapter, and
 - (b) may make any provision authorised by or under this Chapter to be made and such other provision as may be necessary or desirable.
- (3) Subject to any express provision of the instrument or articles of government, the school shall be conducted in accordance with any trust deed relating to it.
- (4) Schedule 5 to this Act (membership and proceedings etc. of governing bodies) shall have effect.
- (5) Schedule 6 to this Act (content of articles of government) shall have effect.

56 Initial instruments and articles of government

- (1) The initial instrument of government for the governing body of a grant-maintained school, and the initial articles of government for such a school, shall be such as are prescribed.
- (2) The initial instrument of government shall have effect as from the incorporation date.
- (3) The initial articles of government shall have effect as from the date of implementation of the proposals but, in the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school, such of the articles as may be prescribed shall have effect as from the incorporation date.

57 Subsequent instruments of government

- (1) The Secretary of State may—
 - (a) if the governing body of a grant-maintained school submit a draft of an instrument of government to have effect in place of their existing instrument, by order make a new instrument of government in terms of the draft or in such terms as he thinks fit, and
 - (b) if such a governing body submit draft modifications of an instrument made under paragraph (a) above or, where an instrument of government made under Chapter IV of Part I of the Education Reform Act 1988 has effect by virtue of paragraph 1(2) of Schedule 20 to this Act, of that instrument, by order modify the instrument concerned in terms of the draft or in such terms as he thinks fit, but shall not make a new instrument otherwise than in terms of the draft, or modify the instrument otherwise than in terms of the draft, unless he has consulted the governing body.
- (2) No order may be made under subsection (1) above in respect of a school having foundation governors unless the governing body have consulted—
 - (a) the person who appoints the foundation governors, and
 - (b) in the case of a Church of England, Church in Wales or Roman Catholic Church school, the appropriate diocesan authority (if different).
- (3) The Secretary of State may by order modify the instrument of government for the governing body of any grant-maintained school.
- (4) An order under subsection (3) above—
 - (a) may relate to all grant-maintained schools, to any category of such schools specified in the order or to any such school so specified, but
 - (b) shall not be made unless the Secretary of State has consulted—
 - (i) the governing body of each grant-maintained school to which the order relates,
 - (ii) if the order relates only to a school having foundation governors, the person who appoints them and, if it is a Church of England, Church in Wales or Roman Catholic Church school, the appropriate diocesan authority (if different), and
 - (iii) if the order relates to two or more schools and any of the schools are Church of England, Church in Wales or Roman Catholic Church schools having foundation governors, a body appearing to the Secretary of State to be representative of the church in question in matters relating to the provision of education in grant-maintained schools having foundation governors.
- (5) Where, by reason of the making of a new instrument, or the modification of an instrument, under this section the number of governors of any category will (unless the required number of governors of that category resign) exceed the number provided for in the instrument, the new instrument or, as the case may be, the instrument as modified shall provide—
 - (a) for such number of governors of that category as is required to eliminate the excess to cease to hold office, and
 - (b) for the selection of those who are to cease to hold office.

58 Subsequent articles of government

- (1) The governing body of a grant-maintained school may, with the consent of the Secretary of State—
 - (a) make new articles of government in place of the existing articles for the school, or
 - (b) modify any articles made under paragraph (a) above or, where articles made under Chapter IV of Part I of the Education Reform Act 1988 have effect by virtue of paragraph 1(2) of Schedule 20 to this Act, those articles.
- (2) Before exercising that power, the governing body of a school having foundation governors shall consult—
 - (a) the person who appoints the foundation governors, and
 - (b) in the case of a Church of England, Church in Wales or Roman Catholic Church school, the appropriate diocesan authority (if different).
- (3) The Secretary of State may by a direction under this section require the governing bodies of grant-maintained schools or any class of such schools specified in the direction or the governing body of any particular grant-maintained school so specified to modify their articles of government in any manner so specified.
- (4) Before giving a direction under this section, the Secretary of State shall consult—
 - (a) the governing body or (as the case may be) each governing body to which the direction applies,
 - (b) if the direction relates only to a school having foundation governors, the person who appoints them and, if it is a Church of England, Church in Wales or Roman Catholic Church school, the appropriate diocesan authority (if different), and
 - (c) if the direction relates to two or more schools and any of the schools are Church of England, Church in Wales or Roman Catholic Church schools having foundation governors, a body appearing to the Secretary of State to be representative of the church in question in matters relating to the provision of education in grant-maintained schools having foundation governors.

Governors

59 Categories of governors

Schedule 7 to this Act (expressions used in connection with categories of governors) shall have effect.

60 Parent governors

- (1) Subject to subsection (6) below, the instrument of government for the governing body of a grant-maintained school shall provide for the governing body to include parent governors.
- (2) Subject to subsection (7) below, the instrument shall provide for the number of parent governors to be—
 - (a) in the case of a primary school, not less than three nor more than five, and
 - (b) in the case of a secondary school, five.

- (3) The instrument shall provide that if—
- (a) one or more vacancies for parent governors are required to be filled by election, and
 - (b) the number of parents standing for election as parent governors is less than the number of vacancies,
- the required number of parent governors shall be made up by persons appointed by the other members of the governing body.
- (4) The instrument shall require governors, in appointing a person under a provision made by virtue of subsection (3) above—
- (a) to appoint a person who is the registered parent of a registered pupil at the school, where it is reasonably practicable to do so, and
 - (b) where it is not, to appoint a person who is the parent of one or more children of compulsory school age.
- (5) In the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status, in relation to the election of a person as a parent governor to the new governing body—
- (a) section 15(2) to (6) of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (qualifications and arrangements for election of parent or teacher governors) shall apply as it applies in relation to the election of a parent governor to the existing governing body, and
 - (b) the new governing body shall inform the authority responsible for election arrangements under that Act of any vacancy arising for a parent governor,
- and the instrument shall have effect accordingly.
- (6) In the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school, the instrument shall have effect as if—
- (a) before the date of implementation of the proposals, the governing body had power to appoint as parent governors persons who satisfy the prescribed requirements, and
 - (b) the first appointments were to be made before that date.
- (7) In the case of a primary school, the initial instrument shall provide for the number of parent governors to be such number (being not less than three nor more than five) as is specified in the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status or, as the case may be, the proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school.
- (8) Subsection (3) above does not apply, in the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school, to vacancies arising before the date of implementation of the proposals.

61 Teacher governors

- (1) Subject to subsection (4) below, the instrument of government for the governing body of a grant-maintained school shall provide for the governing body to include teacher governors.
- (2) Subject to subsection (5) below, the instrument shall provide for the number of teacher governors to be either one or two.

- (3) In the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status, in relation to the election of a person as a teacher governor to the new governing body—
 - (a) section 15(2) to (6) of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 shall apply as it applies in relation to the election of a teacher governor to the existing governing body, and
 - (b) the new governing body shall inform the authority responsible for election arrangements under that Act of any vacancy arising for a teacher governor, and the instrument shall have effect accordingly.
- (4) In the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school, the instrument shall have effect as if—
 - (a) before the date of implementation of the proposals, the governing body had power to appoint as teacher governors persons who satisfy the prescribed requirements, and
 - (b) the first appointments were to be made before that date.
- (5) The initial instrument shall provide for the number of teacher governors to be such number (being either one or two) as is specified in the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status or, as the case may be, the proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school.

62 Head teacher

- (1) Subject to subsection (3) below, the instrument of government for the governing body of a grant-maintained school shall provide for the governing body to include (as a governor ex officio) the person who is for the time being the head teacher.
- (2) In the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status, the reference in subsection (1) above to the head teacher, in relation to any time before the date of implementation of the proposals, is to the existing head teacher.
- (3) In the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school, the initial instrument of government for the school shall provide, in relation to any time before the date of implementation of the proposals when a person has been appointed to be the head teacher, for the governing body to include (as a governor ex officio) that person.

63 First governors

- (1) The instrument of government for the governing body of a grant-maintained school which—
 - (a) is a county school immediately before it becomes grant-maintained, or
 - (b) is established in pursuance of proposals published under section 48 of this Act,
 shall provide for the governing body to include first governors.
- (2) The instrument shall provide for such number of first governors as will secure that they outnumber the other governors.
- (3) Subject to subsections (5) and (6) below, the instrument—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) shall require—
 - (i) at least two of the first governors to be (on the date or dates on which they respectively take office) parents of registered pupils at the school, and
 - (ii) at least two of the first governors to be (on the date or dates on which they respectively take office) members of the local community, but one person may satisfy both requirements, and
 - (b) shall require the governing body, in appointing first governors, to secure that those governors include persons appearing to them to be members of the local business community (and such persons may also satisfy one or both of the requirements of paragraph (a)(i) and (ii) above).
- (4) The initial instrument shall provide for the number of first governors to be such number (being a number which will secure that they will outnumber the other governors) as is specified in the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status or, as the case may be, the proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school.
- (5) In the case of a grant-maintained school which is a county school immediately before it becomes grant-maintained, the instrument, notwithstanding subsection (3) above, shall have effect in relation to the determination of initial first governors—
- (a) as if—
 - (i) it required the first governors to include at least two persons who on the date of their selection or nomination are parents of registered pupils at the school, and
 - (ii) it required the first governors to include at least two persons who appear to those selecting or nominating them to be members of the local community, but one person might satisfy both requirements, and
 - (b) as if it required the first governors to include persons who appear to those selecting or nominating them to be members of the local business community (and such persons might also satisfy one or both of the requirements of paragraph (a)(i) and (ii) above).
- (6) In the case of a grant-maintained school established in pursuance of proposals published under section 48 of this Act—
- (a) any provision of the instrument made by virtue of subsection (3)(a)(i) above shall not apply in relation to the appointment before the date of implementation of the proposals of any first governor, and
 - (b) any provision of the instrument made by virtue of subsection (3)(b) above shall apply as if references to the governing body were references to the funding authority.
- (7) References in this section to governors other than first governors do not include sponsor governors.

64 Power of the Secretary of State to replace first governors

- (1) The instrument of government for the governing body of a grant-maintained school which—
- (a) is a county school immediately before it becomes grant-maintained, or
 - (b) is established in pursuance of proposals published under section 48 of this Act,

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

shall provide for the Secretary of State to have power, where any of subsections (2) to (4) below apply, to replace all or any of the first governors.

- (2) This subsection applies where the governing body have been guilty of substantial or persistent failure to comply or secure compliance with any requirement imposed by or under any enactment.
- (3) This subsection applies where—
 - (a) there is a report of an inspection of the school in which the person who made it expressed the opinion that special measures were required to be taken in relation to the school,
 - (b) either that person was a member of the Inspectorate or the report stated that the Chief Inspector agreed with his opinion,
 - (c) if any registered inspector or member of the Inspectorate has made a later report of an inspection of the school under Chapter I of Part V of this Act, he did not express the opinion in the report that special measures were not required to be taken in relation to the school, and
 - (d) the Secretary of State has received a statement prepared under section 210 of this Act or the period allowed by subsection (2) of that section for the preparation of such a statement has expired;and expressions used in this subsection and in that Part have the same meaning as in that Part.
- (4) This subsection applies where in the opinion of the Secretary of State any action taken or proposed by the governing body of the school, or any failure of the governing body to act, is prejudicial to the provision of education by the school.
- (5) The instrument of government for a grant-maintained school which—
 - (a) is a county school immediately before it becomes grant-maintained, or
 - (b) is established in pursuance of proposals published under section 48 of this Act,shall enable the Secretary of State to make such provision as he thinks fit for filling vacancies for first governors if it appears to him that the governing body are unable or unwilling to fill the vacancies.
- (6) Any provision made by the instrument of government in pursuance of section 63(3) of this Act shall not apply for the purposes of the appointment by virtue of this section of any first governor.

65 Foundation governors

- (1) The instrument of government for the governing body of a grant-maintained school which—
 - (a) is a voluntary school immediately before it becomes grant-maintained, or
 - (b) is established in pursuance of proposals published under section 49 of this Act,shall provide for the governing body to include foundation governors.
- (2) The instrument shall provide for such number of foundation governors as will secure that they outnumber the other governors.
- (3) Subject to subsection (5) below, the instrument may provide for any foundation governorship to be held *ex officio*.
- (4) Subject to subsection (7) below, the instrument—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) where it provides for a foundation governorship to be held ex officio, shall specify the office the holder of which is to be a foundation governor, and
 - (b) shall name the person or persons (if any) who are entitled to appoint any foundation governor.
- (5) An additional foundation governor appointed by virtue of provision made in the instrument of government in pursuance of section 67(2) of this Act may not be appointed to hold office ex officio.
- (6) Subject to subsections (8) and (9) below, the instrument shall provide for at least two of the foundation governors to be (on the date or dates on which they respectively take office) parents of registered pupils at the school.
- (7) The initial instrument shall—
 - (a) provide for the number of foundation governors to be such number (being a number which will secure that they will outnumber the other governors) as is specified,
 - (b) in the case of a grant-maintained school which is a voluntary school immediately before it becomes grant-maintained, provide for the person or persons who, immediately before the incorporation date, were named in the school's instrument of government as being entitled to appoint foundation governors (within the meaning of the Education Act 1944) to the existing governing body to be entitled to appoint the foundation governors for the governing body of the grant-maintained school,
 - (c) in the case of a grant-maintained school established in pursuance of proposals under section 49 of this Act, provide for the promoters to be entitled to appoint the foundation governors,
 - (d) where it provides for a foundation governorship to be held ex officio, provide for it to be held by the holder of a specified office,and in this subsection "specified" means specified in the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status or, as the case may be, the proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school.
- (8) In the case of a grant-maintained school which is a voluntary school immediately before it becomes grant-maintained, the instrument shall have effect, notwithstanding anything in subsection (6) above, in relation to the determination of initial foundation governors as if it provided for the foundation governors to include at least two persons who on the date of their selection or appointment are parents of registered pupils at the school.
- (9) In the case of a grant-maintained school established in pursuance of proposals published under section 49 of this Act, subsection (6) above shall not apply in relation to the appointment of any foundation governor before the date of implementation of the proposals.

66 Sponsor governors

- (1) The instrument of government for the governing body of a grant-maintained secondary school may—
 - (a) name a person as a sponsor of the school, and
 - (b) provide for the governing body to include such number of sponsor governors, not exceeding four, as is specified in the instrument.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (2) Where a governing body of a school are to be incorporated in pursuance of proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status, or proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school, which name a person as a sponsor of the school, and the school is to be a secondary school, the initial instrument of government shall provide—
 - (a) for the person so named to be a sponsor of the school, and
 - (b) for the governing body to include such number of sponsor governors, not exceeding four, as is specified in the proposals.
- (3) Where the instrument of government provides for two or more persons named as sponsors of the school in such proposals or, as the case may be, in the instrument to appoint governors—
 - (a) it shall provide for each sponsor to appoint such number of governors as is specified in relation to him in the proposals or, as the case may be, instrument, and
 - (b) it may not provide for any of those governors to be appointed by two or more sponsors acting jointly.
- (4) In the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school which name a person as a sponsor of the school, the instrument of government shall have effect as if it required the first appointments of sponsor governors to be made before the date of implementation of the proposals.

67 Additional governors

- (1) The instrument of government for the governing body of a grant-maintained school shall enable the Secretary of State to appoint not more than two additional governors if it appears to him that the governing body are not adequately carrying out their responsibilities in respect of the conduct or management of the school.
- (2) The instrument shall enable the appointing authority, during any period when any additional governors appointed by the Secretary of State by virtue of subsection (1) above are in office, to appoint a number of additional first or, as the case may be, foundation governors not greater than the number of additional governors appointed by the Secretary of State who are then in office.
- (3) In subsection (2) above, “the appointing authority” means the person entitled to appoint the first or, as the case may be, foundation governors on the governing body or, if more than one person is so entitled, the persons so entitled acting jointly.

Powers

68 Powers of governing body

- (1) The governing body of a grant-maintained school incorporated in pursuance of proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status may conduct a school of the same description as the school immediately before the date of implementation of the proposals.
- (2) The governing body of a grant-maintained school incorporated in pursuance of proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school may conduct a school of the description in the proposals.

- (3) The school conducted by the governing body of a grant-maintained school shall not be regarded as of a different description, where changes have been made in the character or premises of the school since the date of implementation of the proposals, to that immediately before that date or, as the case may be, to that in the proposals if the changes—
- (a) did not require authorisation under Chapter VII, or
 - (b) were authorised under that Chapter.
- (4) Subject to subsections (6) and (7) below and to any provision made by the instrument or articles of government, the governing body of a grant-maintained school may do anything which appears to them to be necessary or expedient for the purpose of or in connection with the conduct of the school as for the time being constituted.
- (5) The power conferred by subsection (4) above includes in particular power—
- (a) in the case of a grant-maintained school established in pursuance of proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status, to assume the conduct, as from the date of implementation of the proposals, of the school as constituted immediately before that date,
 - (b) in the case of a grant-maintained school established in pursuance of proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school, to conduct, as from the date of implementation of the proposals, a school of the description in the proposals,
 - (c) to acquire and dispose of land and other property,
 - (d) to enter into contracts, including, in particular, contracts for the employment of teachers and other staff,
 - (e) to invest any sums not immediately required for the purposes of meeting the expenses of conducting the school or any liability transferred to the governing body under section 38 of this Act, and
 - (f) to accept gifts of money, land or other property and apply it, or hold and administer it on trust, for such purposes.
- (6) Subsection (4) above does not confer power to borrow money, except money lent under section 92 of this Act.
- (7) The power to dispose of land mentioned in subsection (5)(c) above—
- (a) does not include power to grant any mortgage, charge or other security in respect of any land, and
 - (b) may only be exercised with the written consent of the Secretary of State.
- (8) Without prejudice to subsection (4) above, but subject to any provision made by the instrument or articles of government, the governing body of a grant-maintained school may provide education at the school which is neither primary nor secondary education if—
- (a) it is part-time education suitable to the requirements of persons of any age over compulsory school age, or full-time education suitable to the requirements of persons who have attained the age of nineteen years,
 - (b) it is part-time education suitable to the requirements of junior pupils who have not attained the age of five years and the school provides full-time education for junior pupils of the same age, or
 - (c) they do so as agents for a local education authority under arrangements made with the authority for the purpose.

69 Joint schemes

- (1) Two or more grant-maintained schools may enter into a scheme under this section (referred to in this section and section 70 of this Act as a “joint scheme”).
- (2) A joint scheme may—
 - (a) authorise or require the governing bodies of the schools to which the scheme applies to establish joint committees constituted in accordance with the scheme,
 - (b) provide for the meetings and proceedings of any joint committee so constituted, and
 - (c) authorise or require the governing bodies of the schools to which the scheme applies to delegate, in such circumstances as may be determined in accordance with the scheme, such of their functions as may be so determined to any joint committee so constituted.
- (3) A scheme providing for any joint committee must provide for the committee—
 - (a) to consist only of persons who are governors of the schools to which the scheme applies, and
 - (b) to include a head teacher of one of those schools, a parent governor of one of those schools and a first or foundation governor of one of those schools.
- (4) A joint scheme may authorise or require the governing bodies of the schools to which the scheme applies to exercise jointly, in such circumstances as may be determined in accordance with the scheme, such of their functions as may be so determined; but such a scheme may not provide for the joint exercise of any function relating to the employment of teachers unless it also provides for the establishment of a joint committee to exercise that function.
- (5) In relation to any teacher employed in pursuance of a joint scheme, the School Teachers' Pay and Conditions Act 1991 shall have effect as if he were employed by the joint committee required by subsection (4) above to be established and that joint committee were the governing body of a grant-maintained school.
- (6) A joint scheme shall provide for any expenses of exercising any functions in pursuance of the scheme.
- (7) A joint scheme shall have effect notwithstanding anything contained (whether in pursuance of a requirement under this Act or otherwise) in the instrument or articles of government for any of the schools to which the scheme applies.
- (8) A joint scheme shall not have effect in relation to any matter dealt with in any co-ordinated arrangements for admissions (within the meaning of section 260 of this Act) contained in an agreement approved by the Secretary of State under that section or made in pursuance of a scheme under that section.

70 Making and varying joint schemes

- (1) A joint scheme shall not come into force until it has been approved by the Secretary of State.
- (2) A joint scheme shall provide for the scheme to cease to have effect where the governing bodies of all the schools to which the scheme applies agree.
- (3) A joint scheme—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) may be varied by the governing bodies of all the schools to which the scheme applies if the variations are minor variations or the Secretary of State has approved the variations,
 - (b) if the Secretary of State so directs, shall be varied by the governing bodies in accordance with the direction, and
 - (c) if the Secretary of State so directs, shall cease to have effect.
- (4) The Secretary of State may—
 - (a) approve a scheme, or variations, with such modifications as he thinks fit, or
 - (b) give a direction under subsection (3)(b) or (c) above,only after proper consultations.
- (5) In subsection (4) above, “proper consultations” means consultations with the governing bodies of every school—
 - (a) in the case of a proposed scheme, to which the scheme will apply,
 - (b) in the case of a variation, to which the scheme applies, or will apply after the variation, and
 - (c) in the case of a direction for a scheme to cease to have effect, to which the scheme applies.
- (6) The Secretary of State may by order specify what descriptions of variation are to be regarded as minor for the purposes of this section.

Schools acquiring grant-maintained status: determination etc. of initial governors

71 Determination of initial parent and teacher governors

- (1) Where proposals are required to be published under section 32 of this Act in respect of a school, this section applies for the purpose of determining the persons who are to be named in the proposals as proposed initial governors of any elected category.
- (2) The authority responsible for election arrangements under the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 shall secure that—
 - (a) any election or appointment required for filling any vacancy on the existing governing body occurring before the date of publication of the proposals (including any vacancy arising by virtue of section 72(1) of this Act), and
 - (b) any election or appointment required by subsection (7) below,is held or made if possible before that date, and otherwise as soon as possible afterwards.
- (3) Subject to subsection (4) below, any person who on the date of publication of the proposals is an eligible governor of an elected category on the existing governing body shall be named in the proposals as published as a proposed initial governor of that category.
- (4) If the number of governors of any elected category to be specified in the proposals is less than the number which, on the date of publication of the proposals, will be the number of eligible governors of that category on the existing governing body, such of the eligible governors of that category as may before the date of publication of the proposals be determined—
 - (a) by agreement between them, or
 - (b) in default of agreement, by drawing lots,

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

shall be named in the proposals as published as the proposed initial governors of that category.

- (5) The existing governing body shall secure that any persons required to be named in the proposals in accordance with subsection (4) above are determined before the date of publication of the proposals.
- (6) Subsection (7) below applies if the number which is, or is to be, specified in the proposals of governors of any elected category is greater than the complement of eligible governors of that category on the existing governing body on the date of publication of the proposals; and for those purposes that complement is—
 - (a) the number (if any) of eligible governors of that category on the existing governing body, plus
 - (b) the number (if any) of outstanding vacancies for governors of that category on the existing governing body.
- (7) The authority responsible for election arrangements under the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 shall secure that such number of persons are elected or appointed by the procedure applicable under that Act to hold office on the proposed governing body as governors of that category as is required to make up the difference between the number specified or to be specified in the proposals and the complement of eligible governors of that category on the existing governing body.
- (8) In a case to which subsection (7) above applies, the persons to be named in the proposals as published as the proposed initial governors of the category concerned shall be—
 - (a) any eligible governor of that category, and
 - (b) any person elected or appointed under subsection (7) above as an initial governor of that category before the date of publication of the proposals.

72 Section 71: supplementary provisions

- (1) Subject to subsection (2) below, where the members of the existing governing body of a school to which section 71 of this Act applies include a person—
 - (a) who holds office as a governor of an elected category, and
 - (b) whose term of office is due to come to an end before the date of implementation of the proposals or at any time within the period of six months beginning with that date,

the governing body may by notice in writing to that person terminate his term of office on a date specified in the notice.
- (2) The governing body may only terminate a person's term of office under subsection (1) above if—
 - (a) his term of office is due to come to an end after the proposed date of publication of the proposals, or
 - (b) it would not in their view be reasonably practicable, in the time available between the date on which his term of office is due to come to an end and the proposed date of publication of the proposals, to fill the vacancy by the procedure applicable under the Education (No. 2) Act 1986.
- (3) Without prejudice to section 8(2) of that Act (instrument of government for county, controlled or maintained special school to provide for four year term of office for governors other than ex officio governors), the term of office of a person elected

or appointed in accordance with the requirements of that Act and any requirements of the instrument of government of the school to fill a vacancy arising by virtue of subsection (1) above shall be four years.

- (4) Where any such election or appointment as is referred to in section 71(2) of this Act is held or made on or after the date of publication of the proposals, the existing governing body shall publish at such time and in such manner as may be prescribed notice of the election or appointment.

73 Determination of initial first or foundation governors

- (1) Where proposals are required to be published under section 32 of this Act in respect of a county school, the existing governing body shall select the persons who are to be the initial first governors.
- (2) Where proposals are required to be published under section 32 of this Act in respect of a voluntary school, the person or persons named in the school's instrument of government as being entitled to appoint foundation governors (within the meaning of the Education Act 1944) to the existing governing body shall select the persons who are to be the initial foundation governors.
- (3) The duties under subsections (1) and (2) above are to be complied with, if possible, before the date of publication of the proposals and otherwise as soon as possible after that date.
- (4) Any person selected under subsection (1) or (2) above shall, if possible, be named in the proposals as published as a proposed initial first or, as the case may be, foundation governor.
- (5) In the case of any person so selected who is not named in the proposals as published, the existing governing body shall—
- (a) give the Secretary of State notice in writing of the relevant particulars in respect of the person selected before such date as may be specified in directions given by the Secretary of State, and
 - (b) publish at such time and in such manner as may be prescribed notice of his selection.
- (6) Where the Secretary of State is notified of any particulars under subsection (5) above, he shall modify the proposals by including in them the particulars notified to him.
- (7) The existing governing body shall secure that any selection required by subsection (2) above is carried out in accordance with that subsection.
- (8) Where any selection falls in accordance with subsection (2) above to be made by two or more persons, it shall be made by those persons acting jointly; and if they fail to agree on the selection, it shall be made by the Secretary of State or in accordance with directions given by him.
- (9) Before selecting, or giving any direction as to the selection of, an initial foundation governor in a case where religious education in accordance with the tenets of a particular religion or religious denomination is given to pupils at the school in pursuance of section 27 or 28 of the Education Act 1944 (religious education at voluntary schools), the Secretary of State shall consult the persons appearing to him to be the appropriate authority of the religion or denomination concerned.

74 Replacement of proposed initial parent and teacher governors before incorporation

- (1) This section applies where proposals published under section 32 of this Act are pending in respect of a school.
- (2) If a person named in the proposals as a proposed governor of an elected category who was elected under section 71 of this Act or this section—
 - (a) dies,
 - (b) becomes prospectively disqualified for holding office as such a governor on the proposed governing body, or
 - (c) notifies the existing governing body that he is no longer willing to serve on the proposed governing body,

then, subject to subsection (3), below the authority responsible for election arrangements under the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 in relation to the school shall secure that a person is elected or appointed by the procedure applicable under that Act to hold office on the proposed governing body in his place.

- (3) Where in a case to which subsection (2) above applies the Secretary of State is satisfied that it would not be reasonably practicable to hold an election or make an appointment in accordance with that subsection in the time available, he shall modify the proposals by including in them (in substitution, where appropriate, for any particulars they supersede) the relevant particulars in respect of a person nominated by the existing governing body.
- (4) If at any time a person named in the proposals as a proposed governor of an elected category who was so named by virtue of being an eligible governor of that category—
 - (a) ceases to hold office on the existing governing body,
 - (b) becomes prospectively disqualified for holding office as such a governor on the proposed governing body, or
 - (c) notifies the existing governing body that he is no longer willing to serve on the proposed governing body,

the Secretary of State shall modify the proposals by including in them (in substitution, where appropriate, for any particulars they supersede) the relevant particulars in respect of a person nominated by the existing governing body who is at that time an eligible governor of that category who is neither named in the proposals nor prospectively disqualified as mentioned in paragraph (b) above.

- (5) Where in a case to which subsection (4)(a) above applies—
 - (a) there is no such eligible governor at the time in question, and
 - (b) the Secretary of State is satisfied that it would not be reasonably practicable in the time available before he determines the proposals to fill the vacancy on the existing governing body by the procedure applicable under the Education (No. 2) Act 1986,

the Secretary of State shall modify the proposals by including in them (in substitution, where appropriate, for any particulars they supersede) the relevant particulars in respect of a person nominated by the existing governing body.

- (6) Where in a case to which subsection (4)(b) or (c) above applies there is no such eligible governor at the time in question, subsection (2) above shall apply as if the former proposed governor had been elected under section 71 of this Act.

(7) If a person named in the proposals as a proposed governor of an elected category who was nominated by the existing governing body under this section—

- (a) dies,
- (b) becomes prospectively disqualified for holding office as such a governor on the proposed governing body, or
- (c) notifies the existing governing body that he is no longer willing to serve on the proposed governing body,

the Secretary of State shall modify the proposals by including in them (in substitution, where appropriate, for any particulars they supersede) the relevant particulars in respect of a person nominated by the existing governing body.

(8) References in this section to a person named in the proposals include any person required to be so named.

(9) The existing governing body shall—

- (a) give the Secretary of State notice in writing of the occurrence of any event within subsection (2), (4) or (7) above,
- (b) make any nomination required for the purposes of this section, and
- (c) give the Secretary of State notice in writing of the relevant particulars in respect of any person nominated by them under this section.

75 Replacement of proposed initial first or foundation governors before incorporation

(1) Where proposals published under section 32 of this Act are pending in respect of a county school and a person selected under section 73(1) of this Act to be a first governor—

- (a) dies,
- (b) becomes prospectively disqualified for holding office as such a governor on the proposed governing body, or
- (c) notifies the existing governing body that he is no longer willing to serve on the proposed governing body,

the Secretary of State shall modify the proposals by including in them (in substitution, where appropriate, for any particulars they supersede) the relevant particulars in respect of a person nominated by the existing governing body.

(2) Where proposals published under section 32 of this Act are pending in respect of a voluntary school and a person selected under section 73(2) of this Act to be a foundation governor—

- (a) dies,
- (b) becomes prospectively disqualified for holding office as such a governor on the proposed governing body, or
- (c) notifies the existing governing body that he is no longer willing to serve on the proposed governing body,

the Secretary of State shall modify the proposals by including in them (in substitution, where appropriate, for any particulars they supersede) the relevant particulars in respect of a person nominated by the person or persons named in the school's instrument of government as being entitled to appoint the foundation governors (within the meaning of the Education Act 1944) to the existing governing body.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (3) Subsections (8) and (9) of section 73 of this Act apply for the purposes of subsection (2) above as they apply for the purposes of that section, but as if references to selection were to nomination.
- (4) The existing governing body shall—
 - (a) give the Secretary of State notice in writing of the occurrence of any event within subsection (1) or (2) above,
 - (b) make or secure the making of any nomination required for the purposes of this section, and
 - (c) give the Secretary of State written notification of the relevant particulars in respect of any person nominated under this section.

76 Elections and appointments required for determining initial governors of an elected category: supplementary provisions

- (1) Section 15(2) to (6) of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 shall apply in relation to the election of a person under section 71 or 74 of this Act to hold office as an initial parent governor or an initial teacher governor as it applies in relation to the election of a parent governor or teacher governor to the existing governing body.
- (2) Where the authority responsible for election arrangements under the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 in relation to a school to which section 71 of this Act applies is the local education authority, the existing governing body shall give notice in writing to the authority of the proposed date of publication of the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status for the school.
- (3) Where the authority responsible for election arrangements under the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 in relation to a school to which section 71 or 74 of this Act applies is the local education authority, the existing governing body shall notify the authority in writing—
 - (a) of any election or appointment which appears to them to be required under section 71 or 74 of this Act in relation to the proposed governing body, and
 - (b) if the number of eligible governors of any category on the existing governing body is for the time being less than the proposed number of initial governors of that category, of any vacancy on the existing governing body for a governor of that category.
- (4) Where an election or appointment required for determining a proposed initial governor of any category is held or made at a time when proposals published under section 32 of this Act are pending in respect of the school, the existing governing body shall give the Secretary of State notice in writing of the relevant particulars in respect of the person elected or appointed.
- (5) Where the Secretary of State is notified of any particulars under subsection (4) above, he shall modify the proposals by including in them the particulars notified to him (in substitution, where appropriate, for any particulars they supersede).
- (6) For the purposes of subsection (4) above, an election or appointment is required for determining a proposed initial governor of any category if—
 - (a) it is required under section 71 or 74 of this Act, or
 - (b) it is required for filling a vacancy on the existing governing body for a governor of that category and the number of eligible governors of that category on the existing governing body is for the time being less than the proposed number of initial governors of that category.

77 Initial sponsor governors

- (1) In relation to any governing body to be incorporated under Chapter II in pursuance of proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status which give the name of a sponsor of the school, regulations shall make provision—
 - (a) for the determination of the persons who are to be the initial sponsor governors, and
 - (b) for the persons so determined to be named in the proposals, whether as published or as modified in pursuance of the regulations.
- (2) The regulations may in particular make provision corresponding to any of the provisions of sections 71 to 76 of this Act.

New grant-maintained schools: determination etc. of initial governors

78 Initial governors for new grant-maintained schools

- (1) This section applies in relation to any governing body to be incorporated under Chapter IV.
- (2) Regulations shall make provision for the appointment of the persons who are to be the initial governors and, in particular, shall require each appointing authority—
 - (a) to obtain the Secretary of State's consent before making any appointment, and
 - (b) to notify the Secretary of State before the incorporation date of the appointments to all the initial governorships for which the authority is the appointing authority.
- (3) In subsection (2) above, the "appointing authority" in relation to any appointment, means the person entitled to make the appointment.

General and supplementary

79 Saving for defects in selection or nomination

- (1) The proceedings of the governing body of a grant-maintained school shall not be invalidated by any defect in any procedure required under this Chapter in relation to the determination of any person to hold office as an initial governor.
- (2) This section does not prejudice the generality of paragraph 11 of Schedule 5 to this Act.

80 Chapter V: interpretation

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of this Chapter.
- (2) References to the authority responsible for election arrangements under the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 in relation to a school are references to the authority or body by whom all necessary arrangements for any election of parent governors or teacher governors to the governing body of the school fall to be made under section 15(2) of that Act (which imposes responsibility for those arrangements on the local education authority in relation to county, controlled and maintained special schools and on the governing body of the school concerned in relation to aided and special agreement schools).

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (3) References, in relation to a vacancy for a governor of an elected category on the existing governing body of a school in respect of which proposals are required to be or have been published under section 32 of this Act and in sections 71(7) and 74(2) of this Act, to the procedure applicable under the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 are references—
- (a) except where any provision made by virtue of section 5 of that Act (appointment of parent governors by governing body) applies, to the holding of an election under that Act, and
 - (b) where any such provision applies, to the making of an appointment in accordance with that provision.
- (4) A person named in proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status in respect of a school as a proposed initial governor of any category shall be treated as becoming prospectively disqualified for holding office as such a governor on the proposed governing body if an event occurs in relation to him which, if—
- (a) it had occurred on or after the incorporation date, and
 - (b) the instrument prescribed under section 56 of this Act for the governing bodies of schools of the kind in question had then been in force,
- would have caused him to become disqualified for holding such office.

CHAPTER VI

FUNDING OF GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

Grants: general

81 Maintenance grants

- (1) Subject to the provisions of this Part of this Act, the funding authority shall make annual grants (to be known as maintenance grants) to the governing body of each grant-maintained school, each such grant being made in respect of expenditure for the purposes of the school incurred or to be incurred by the governing body in the financial year to which the grant relates.
- (2) The amount of the maintenance grant payable in respect of a school for a financial year shall be such as may be determined (and from time to time revised) in accordance with regulations (referred to in this Chapter as “grant regulations”); and grant regulations may provide for determinations (and revisions) to be made by reference to amounts determined or redetermined for the purposes of this section by the Secretary of State.
- (3) Subject to—
- (a) any provision made by virtue of section 69(6) of this Act,
 - (b) any requirements imposed by the funding authority under section 84(1) of this Act, and
 - (c) any requirements as to the application of maintenance grant contained in the articles of government of the school,
- the governing body of a grant-maintained school shall apply any payments made to them in respect of maintenance grant solely for the purposes of the school.

- (4) In this Chapter “the purposes of the school” do not include purposes wholly referable to the provision of—
- (a) part-time education suitable to the requirements of persons of any age over compulsory school age, or
 - (b) full-time education suitable to the requirements of persons who have attained the age of nineteen years.

82 Special purpose grants

- (1) Grant regulations may provide for the payment by the funding authority to the governing bodies of grant-maintained schools of grants (to be known as special purpose grants) in respect of expenditure, of any class or description specified in the regulations, incurred or to be incurred by the governing bodies—
- (a) for or in connection with educational purposes of any class or description so specified,
 - (b) in making any provision (whether of educational services or facilities or otherwise) of any class or description so specified which appears to the funding authority to be required for meeting any special needs of the population of the area served by the schools in question, or
 - (c) in respect of expenses of any class or description so specified, being expenses which it appears to the funding authority the governing bodies of such schools cannot reasonably be expected to meet from maintenance grant.
- (2) Grant regulations may provide for special purpose grants to be payable—
- (a) on a regular basis in respect of expenditure of a recurrent kind, or
 - (b) by reference to expenditure incurred or to be incurred on particular occasions or during any particular period.

83 Capital grants

- (1) Grant regulations may provide for the payment by the funding authority to the governing bodies of grant-maintained schools of grants (to be known as capital grants) in respect of expenditure of a capital nature, of any class or description specified in the regulations, incurred or to be incurred by the governing bodies.
- (2) The descriptions of expenditure which are to be regarded for the purposes of capital grant as expenditure of a capital nature shall be such as may be determined by or in accordance with the regulations.
- (3) Where the governing body of a grant-maintained school include sponsor governors, the funding authority shall, if directed to do so by the Secretary of State, pay capital grant of such amount as may be specified in the directions in respect of such expenditure falling within subsection (1) above as is incurred, or to be incurred, by the governing body for such purposes as may be specified in the directions.
- (4) Before giving a direction under subsection (3) above, the Secretary of State shall consult the funding authority.
- (5) A direction under subsection (3) above may not be given after the end of the period of twelve months beginning—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) in the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status which include sponsor governors on the incorporation date, with that date,
- (b) in the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school which include sponsor governors on the date of implementation of the proposals, with that date, and
- (c) in any other case, with the date when the instrument of government naming a person as the sponsor of the school came into effect.

84 Imposition of requirements on governing body in receipt of grant

- (1) A governing body to whom any payments in respect of maintenance grant, capital grant or special purpose grant are made shall comply with such requirements of a kind mentioned in subsection (2) below as the funding authority may from time to time impose.
- (2) The kinds of requirements which may be imposed under subsection (1) above are—
 - (a) requirements specified in grant regulations as requirements which may be imposed by the funding authority on governing bodies to whom such payments are made, and
 - (b) requirements determined in accordance with grant regulations by the funding authority.
- (3) Requirements imposed under subsection (1) above—
 - (a) may be imposed on or at any time after the making of any payment by reference to which they are imposed, and
 - (b) subject to subsection (4) below, may at any time be varied by the funding authority.
- (4) The power of the funding authority to vary such a requirement—
 - (a) does not apply to a requirement of the kind mentioned in subsection (2)(a) above, or a requirement required to be imposed by the regulations (by virtue of subsection (9) below) or by directions under section 9 of this Act, unless the Secretary of State has consented to the variation, and
 - (b) is subject, in the case of a requirement of the kind mentioned in subsection (2)(b) above, to the provisions of the regulations relating to the determination of the requirements that may be imposed in the case of payments in respect of the grant in question.
- (5) Requirements imposed under subsection (1) above may at any time be waived or removed by the funding authority with the consent of the Secretary of State.
- (6) The requirements—
 - (a) which may be specified in or authorised by grant regulations as requirements which may be imposed on governing bodies to whom payments are made in respect of special purpose grant, or
 - (b) which may be imposed by the funding authority on a governing body to whom payments in respect of capital grant are made,
 may, in particular, if any conditions specified in the requirements are satisfied, require the payment to the funding authority of the whole or any part of the following amount.
- (7) That amount is—

- (a) the amount of the payments made in respect of the grant, or
 - (b) so much of the value of any premises or equipment in respect of which the grant was paid as is determined in accordance with the requirements to be properly attributable to the payment of such grant,whichever is the greater.
- (8) No such requirement as is referred to in subsection (6) above may be imposed where any payment is made in respect of capital grant if—
 - (a) the grant is made in respect of the provision, alteration or repair of premises for a school, and
 - (b) any freehold interest in the premises in respect of which the grant is made is, or is to be, held on trust for the purposes of the school.
- (9) Grant regulations may require the funding authority to impose any such requirements as may be imposed under the preceding provisions of this section.

85 Grants: further provisions

- (1) The times at which, and the manner in which, payments are made in respect of—
 - (a) maintenance grant for a grant-maintained school in respect of any financial year,
 - (b) special purpose grant, and
 - (c) capital grant,shall be such as may be determined from time to time by the funding authority.
- (2) Payments in respect of maintenance grant for a school in respect of any financial year may be made, before any amount has been determined in accordance with grant regulations as the amount of such grant payable for that year in respect of the school, by reference to an estimate of the amount which will be so payable made by the funding authority.
- (3) Where in respect of any financial year an over-payment of maintenance grant is made to the governing body of a school, a sum equal to the amount of that over-payment shall be recoverable from the governing body by the funding authority.
- (4) Where a sum is payable by the governing body of a school to the funding authority—
 - (a) in respect of an over-payment of maintenance grant in respect of a financial year, or
 - (b) by way of repayment of special purpose grant or capital grant (whether by virtue of a requirement such as is mentioned in section 84(6) of this Act or otherwise),the funding authority may (without prejudice to any other mode of recovery) recover the whole or any part of that sum by deducting it from any grant payable by them to the governing body.
- (5) In this section, references to an over-payment of maintenance grant in respect of a financial year are to any amount by which the aggregate amount of any payments in respect of maintenance grant made to the governing body of the school in question in respect of the year exceeds the amount finally determined in accordance with grant regulations as the amount of maintenance grant payable for that year in respect of the school.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (6) The funding authority shall exercise any power conferred on them by sections 53 and 81 to 84 of this Act, paragraph 6 of Schedule 4 to this Act or this section in such manner (if any) as may be specified in or determined in accordance with grant regulations.

Grants: Wales (until establishment of the SFCW)

86 Application of sections 87 to 91

Before the Schools Funding Council for Wales begin to exercise their functions, sections 87 to 91 of this Act shall have effect in relation to grant-maintained schools in Wales in place of sections 81(1) and (3), 82(1), 83(1), 84 and 85 of this Act.

87 Maintenance grants

- (1) Subject to the provisions of this Part of this Act, the Secretary of State shall make annual grants (to be known as maintenance grants) to the governing body of each grant-maintained school, each such grant being made in respect of expenditure for the purposes of the school incurred or to be incurred by the governing body in the financial year to which the grant relates.

- (2) Subject to—

- (a) any provision made by virtue of section 69(6) of this Act,
- (b) any requirements imposed by the Secretary of State under section 90(1) or (3) of this Act, and
- (c) any requirements as to the application of maintenance grant contained in the articles of government of the school,

the governing body of a grant-maintained school shall apply any payments made to them in respect of maintenance grant solely for the purposes of the school.

88 Special purpose grants

Grant regulations may provide for the payment by the Secretary of State to the governing bodies of grant-maintained schools of grants (to be known as special purpose grants) in respect of expenditure incurred or to be incurred by them of any class or description specified in the regulations—

- (a) for or in connection with educational purposes of any class or description so specified,
- (b) in making any provision (whether of educational services or facilities or otherwise) of any class or description so specified which appears to the Secretary of State to be required for meeting any special needs of the population of the area served by the school, or
- (c) in respect of expenses of any class or description so specified, being expenses which it appears to the Secretary of State the governing bodies of such schools cannot reasonably be expected to meet from maintenance grant.

89 Capital grants

Grant regulations may provide for the payment by the Secretary of State to the governing bodies of grant-maintained schools of grants (to be known as capital grants)

in respect of expenditure of a capital nature, of any class or description specified in the regulations, incurred or to be incurred by the governing bodies.

90 Imposition of requirements on governing body in receipt of grant

- (1) A governing body to whom any payments in respect of maintenance grant or special purpose grants are made shall comply with such requirements of a kind mentioned in subsection (2) below as the Secretary of State may from time to time impose.
- (2) The kinds of requirements which may be imposed under subsection (1) above are—
 - (a) requirements specified in grant regulations as requirements which may be imposed by the Secretary of State on governing bodies to whom such payments are made, and
 - (b) requirements determined in accordance with grant regulations by the Secretary of State.
- (3) A governing body to whom any payments in respect of capital grant are made shall comply with such requirements determined by the Secretary of State as he may from time to time impose.
- (4) Requirements imposed under subsection (1) or (3) above—
 - (a) may be imposed on or at any time after the making of any payment by reference to which they are imposed, and
 - (b) may at any time be waived or removed or, subject to subsection (5) below, varied by the Secretary of State.
- (5) The power of the Secretary of State to vary such a requirement—
 - (a) does not apply to a requirement of the kind mentioned in subsection (2)(a) above, and
 - (b) is subject, in the case of a requirement of the kind mentioned in subsection (2)(b) above, to the provisions of the regulations relating to the determination of the requirements that may be imposed in the case of payments in respect of the grants in question.
- (6) The requirements—
 - (a) which may be specified in or authorised by grant regulations as requirements which may be imposed on governing bodies to whom payments are made in respect of special purpose grant, or
 - (b) which may be imposed by the Secretary of State on a governing body to whom payments in respect of capital grant are made,may, in particular, if any conditions specified in the requirements are satisfied, require the payment to the Secretary of State of the whole or any part of the following amount.
- (7) That amount is—
 - (a) the amount of the payments made in respect of the grant, or
 - (b) so much of the value of any premises or equipment in respect of which the grant was paid as is determined in accordance with the requirements to be properly attributable to the payment of such grant,whichever is the greater.
- (8) No such requirement as is referred to in subsection (6) above may be imposed where any payment is made in respect of capital grant if—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) the grant is made in respect of the provision, alteration or repair of premises for a school, and
- (b) any freehold interest in the premises in respect of which the grant is made is, or is to be, held on trust for the purposes of the school.

91 Grants: further provisions

- (1) The times at which, and the manner in which, payments are made in respect of—
 - (a) maintenance grant for a grant-maintained school in respect of any financial year,
 - (b) special purpose grants, and
 - (c) capital grants,
 shall be such as may be determined from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (2) Payments in respect of maintenance grant for a school in respect of any financial year may be made, before any amount has been determined in accordance with grant regulations as the amount of such grant payable for that year in respect of the school, by reference to an estimate of the amount which will be so payable made by the Secretary of State.
- (3) Where in respect of any financial year an over-payment of maintenance grant is made to the governing body of a school, a sum equal to the amount of that over-payment shall be recoverable from the governing body by the Secretary of State.
- (4) Where a sum is payable by the governing body of a school to the Secretary of State—
 - (a) in respect of an over-payment of maintenance grant in respect of a financial year, or
 - (b) by way of repayment of special purpose grant or capital grant (whether by virtue of a requirement such as is mentioned in section 90(6) of this Act or otherwise),
 the Secretary of State may (without prejudice to any other mode of recovery) recover the whole or any part of that sum by deducting it from any grant payable by him to the governing body.
- (5) In this section, references to an over-payment of maintenance grant in respect of a financial year are to any amount by which the aggregate amount of any payments in respect of maintenance grant made to the governing body of the school in question in respect of the year exceeds the amount finally determined in accordance with grant regulations as the amount of maintenance grant payable for that year in respect of the school.

Loans

92 Loans to governing bodies

- (1) The appropriate authority may make loans to the governing bodies of grant-maintained schools in respect of expenditure of any class or description specified in regulations (referred to in this section as “loan regulations”) incurred or to be incurred by the governing bodies for or in connection with such purposes as may be so specified.
- (2) Any loan under this section shall be made on such terms as loan regulations may require, being terms specified in or determined in accordance with the regulations.

- (3) Where any sum is payable by the governing body of a grant-maintained school to the appropriate authority in respect of the principal of, or interest on, any loan under this section, the appropriate authority may (without prejudice to any other mode of recovery) recover the whole or any part of that sum by deducting it from any grant payable by them to the governing body.
- (4) In this section, the “appropriate authority”—
 - (a) in relation to England before the Funding Agency for Schools begin to exercise their functions, and
 - (b) in relation to Wales before the Schools Funding Council for Wales begin to exercise their functions,means the Secretary of State and, in any other case, means the funding authority.
- (5) The funding authority shall exercise any power conferred on them by this section in such manner (if any) as may be specified in or determined in accordance with loan regulations.

Recovery from local funds

93 Recovery from local funds of sums in respect of maintenance grant

- (1) Where the Secretary of State so determines, this section applies to a local education authority in respect of any financial year for which the determination is made; and the determination may apply this section in respect of all grant-maintained schools in the area of the authority or in respect of such grant-maintained schools in that area as may be ascertained by or in accordance with the determination.
- (2) The Secretary of State shall in respect of each financial year for which he makes a determination under subsection (1) above in respect of a local education authority, give notice in writing to the authority of the terms of the determination.
- (3) The Secretary of State may recover from a local education authority to which this section applies in respect of any financial year sums in respect of the maintenance grant payable for that year to the governing bodies of any grant-maintained schools in respect of which the determination applies.
- (4) Subject to subsection (5) below, sums recoverable by virtue of this section in respect of a school for any financial year—
 - (a) shall be of such amounts, and
 - (b) shall fall due on such date or dates,as may be determined by the Secretary of State.
- (5) The amount of any sum so recoverable shall be determined by reference to any amount—
 - (a) which has previously been determined under section 94 of this Act as the total amount recoverable in respect of the school and financial year in question, or
 - (b) (where no amount has previously been determined as mentioned in paragraph (a) above) which is estimated by the Secretary of State as the amount which will initially be determined under section 94 of this Act as the total amount recoverable in respect of the school and financial year in question,

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

and which the Secretary of State considers it appropriate to adopt for the time being as a basis for determining the amounts of sums so recoverable.

- (6) The Secretary of State may recover sums due to him under this section in either or both of the following ways—
- (a) by requiring the local education authority to pay the whole or any part of any such sum at such time or times as he thinks fit, and
 - (b) by deducting, at such time or times as he thinks fit, the whole or any part of any such sum from any grant payable by him to the authority under any enactment (whenever passed) or from any amount payable by him to the authority under Part III of Schedule 8 to the Local Government Finance Act 1988 (redistributed non-domestic rates).
- (7) Any sums received by the Secretary of State by virtue of this section shall be paid into the Consolidated Fund.

94 Determination of total amount recoverable under section 93

- (1) The total amount recoverable by virtue of section 93 of this Act in respect of a school for any financial year shall be such as may be determined (and from time to time revised) in accordance with regulations made by the Secretary of State (referred to in this section as “recoupment regulations”).
- (2) Subject to any provision made by such regulations by virtue of subsection (3) below, recoupment regulations shall provide for the total amount so recoverable to be determined by reference to any amount determined under grant regulations as the amount of the maintenance grant payable in respect of the school and the financial year in question (as from time to time revised).
- (3) Recoupment regulations may provide for reducing any amount which would otherwise fall to be determined under the regulations as the total amount recoverable from any local education authority by virtue of section 93 of this Act for a financial year by reference to any excess amounts recovered under that section in respect of any previous financial year.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3) above, an excess amount is recovered under section 93 of this Act in respect of a financial year if the aggregate amount of the sums recovered under that section for that year from the local education authority—
 - (a) in respect of any school in respect of which sums are recoverable from the authority under that section, or
 - (b) where there is more than one such school, in respect of both or all of those schools,
 exceeds the total amount recoverable in accordance with recoupment regulations in respect of that school or (as the case may be) in respect of both or all of those schools for that year.

95 Provisions consequential on section 93

- (1) For the purposes of sections 51 and 52 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (recoupment for provision for education of pupils belonging to, or having connection with, area of another authority), the provision for education made in any financial year in respect of a registered pupil at a grant-maintained school which is not made by the local

education authority shall, if sums are recoverable under section 93 of this Act in respect of the school and that year from the authority, be taken to have been made by them.

- (2) The reference in subsection (1) above to provision for education includes a reference to provision of any benefits or services for which provision is made by or under this Act or any other enactment relating to education.
- (3) The governing body of a grant-maintained school shall, if sums are recoverable under section 93 of this Act in respect of the school from a local education authority, provide the authority with such information relating to the registered pupils at the school as the authority may require for the purpose of claiming any amount in respect of such a pupil from another authority by virtue of regulations under section 51 or 52 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986.

CHAPTER VII

ALTERATION ETC. OF GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

96 Proposals for change of character etc. by governing body

- (1) Subject to subsection (2) below, where the governing body of a grant-maintained school intend to make a significant change in the character, or significant enlargement of the premises, of the school or to transfer the school to a new site they shall—
 - (a) publish proposals for that purpose in such manner as may be prescribed, and
 - (b) submit to the Secretary of State a copy of the published proposals.
- (2) No proposals shall be published under this section for the purpose of making a significant change in the religious character of a school unless the trustees under any trust deed relating to the school have given their consent in writing to the change in question.
- (3) Before publishing any proposals under this section, the governing body shall consult such persons as appear to them to be appropriate; and in discharging their duty under this subsection, the governing body shall have regard to any guidance given to them from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (4) Proposals published under this section shall include particulars—
 - (a) of the proposed time or times of implementation of the proposals, and
 - (b) of the number of pupils proposed to be admitted to the school in each relevant age group in the first school year in relation to which the proposals have been wholly implemented,and, if pupils are proposed to be admitted for nursery education, shall give the prescribed information.
- (5) Proposals published under this section shall be accompanied by a statement which—
 - (a) describes any effect the implementation of the proposals would have on provision at the school for pupils who have special educational needs, and
 - (b) explains the effect of subsection (6) below.
- (6) Within the period of two months beginning with the date of publication of the proposals, objections to the proposals may be made by any of the following—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) if the proposals affect the provision of education to which section 2(1) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 applies, the appropriate further education funding council,
 - (b) any ten or more local government electors for the area,
 - (c) the governing body of any school affected by the proposals, and
 - (d) any local education authority concerned,
- and objections under this subsection shall be submitted to the Secretary of State.

- (7) Where the proposals are to transfer a school to a site in a different area, objections under subsection (6) above to the proposals may also be made by any ten or more local government electors for that area.
- (8) No decision taken at a meeting of the governing body of a grant-maintained school that would result in the publication of proposals under this section shall have effect unless it is confirmed at a second meeting of the governing body held not less than twenty-eight days after the first.

97 Proposals for change of character etc. by funding authority

- (1) This section has effect in respect of the area of a local education authority if an order under section 12(1) of this Act applies to the area.
- (2) Where the funding authority are of the opinion that—
 - (a) a significant change should be made in the character of a grant-maintained school,
 - (b) a significant enlargement of the premises of such a school should be made, or
 - (c) such a school should be transferred to a new site in the area or in another area to which an order under that section applies,
 they may publish proposals for that purpose in such manner as may be prescribed and submit a copy of the published proposals to the Secretary of State.
- (3) No proposals shall be published under this section for the purpose of making a significant change in the religious character of a school.
- (4) Before publishing any proposals under this section the funding authority shall consult—
 - (a) such persons as appear to them to be appropriate, and
 - (b) in the case of a Church of England, Church in Wales or Roman Catholic Church school having any foundation governor who is appointed by the appropriate diocesan authority, that authority;
 and in discharging their duty under paragraph (a) above, the funding authority shall have regard to any guidance given to them from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (5) Proposals published under this section shall include particulars—
 - (a) of the proposed time or times of implementation of the proposals, and
 - (b) of the number of pupils proposed to be admitted to the school in each relevant age group in the first school year in relation to which the proposals have been wholly implemented,
 and, if pupils are proposed to be admitted for nursery education, shall give the prescribed information.
- (6) Proposals published under this section shall be accompanied by a statement which—

- (a) describes any effect the implementation of the proposals would have on provision at the school for pupils who have special educational needs, and
 - (b) explains the effect of subsection (7) below.
- (7) Within the period of two months beginning with the date of publication of the proposals, objections to the proposals may be submitted to the funding authority by any of the following—
 - (a) if the proposals affect the provision of education to which section 2(1) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 applies, the appropriate further education funding council,
 - (b) any ten or more local government electors for the area,
 - (c) the governing body of the school to which the proposals relate,
 - (d) the governing body of any other school affected by the proposals, and
 - (e) any local education authority concerned.
- (8) Where the proposals are to transfer a school to a site in a different area, objections under subsection (7) above to the proposals may also be made by any ten or more local government electors for that area.
- (9) Not later than one month after the end of that period, the funding authority shall send to the Secretary of State copies of all such objections made (and not withdrawn in writing) together with their observations on them.

98 Approval, adoption or rejection of proposals

- (1) Proposals published under section 96 of this Act require the approval of the Secretary of State.
- (2) Proposals published under section 97 of this Act require the approval of the Secretary of State if—
 - (a) he gives notice to that effect to the funding authority within two months after the submission to him of the published proposals, or
 - (b) objections have been made under subsection (7) of that section within the period allowed under that subsection (unless all objections so made have been withdrawn in writing within that period).
- (3) Where under subsection (1) or (2) above any proposals require the approval of the Secretary of State, he may reject them, approve them without modification or, after consulting the governing body and, in the case of proposals published under section 97 of this Act, the funding authority, approve them with such modifications as he thinks desirable.
- (4) Where proposals published under section 97 of this Act do not require the approval of the Secretary of State, the funding authority shall determine whether to adopt the proposals.
- (5) The funding authority shall—
 - (a) make any determination under subsection (4) above not later than four months after the publication of the proposals, and
 - (b) give notice in writing to the Secretary of State and the governing body of their determination.

99 Approval of school premises

- (1) Where the governing body of a grant-maintained school publish proposals under section 96 of this Act, they shall if the funding authority so direct submit to the authority, at such time and in such form and manner as the authority may direct, the particulars mentioned in subsection (3) below; and particulars so submitted require the approval of the funding authority under this section.
- (2) Where the funding authority publish proposals under section 97 of this Act, they shall if in their opinion the circumstances so require prepare the particulars mentioned in subsection (3) below; and particulars so prepared require adoption by the funding authority under this section.
- (3) The particulars are—
 - (a) particulars of the provision made or to be made in respect of the means of access to and within the premises or proposed premises of the school, and
 - (b) such other particulars in respect of the premises or proposed premises of the school as the funding authority may require or, in the case of proposals published under section 97 of this Act, as may be required.
- (4) The particulars prepared or submitted under subsection (3)(a) above shall indicate the extent to which the provision referred to conforms with the minimum requirements, so far as they are relevant to school premises, of—
 - (a) Design Note 18 “Access for Disabled People to Educational Buildings” published in 1984 on behalf of the Secretary of State, or
 - (b) if that Note has been replaced by a document prescribed by regulations made or having effect as if made under the Town and Country Planning Act 1990, that document.

100 Implementation of proposals, etc

- (1) Where any proposals are approved or adopted under section 98 of this Act, it shall be the duty of the governing body of the school to which the proposals relate to implement them.
- (2) Proposals required to be implemented under this section shall be implemented in accordance with any particulars approved or adopted under section 99 of this Act.
- (3) The Secretary of State may, at the request of a governing body, modify any proposals published under section 96 of this Act which the governing body are required to implement under this section.
- (4) The Secretary of State may—
 - (a) at the request of a governing body, or
 - (b) at the request of the funding authority and after consulting the governing body, modify any proposals published under section 97 of this Act which the governing body are required to implement under this section.
- (5) Neither the governing body of a grant-maintained school nor any other person shall make any significant change in the character, or significant enlargement of the premises, of the school or transfer the school to a new site, or undertake to do any of those things, unless proposals have been published under section 96 or 97 of this Act and any requirements of section 98 have been complied with.

(6) Subsection (5) above does not—

- (a) prevent the Secretary of State allowing such steps to be taken by the governing body of a grant-maintained school, pending compliance with those requirements and the giving or making of the approval or adoption, as the Secretary of State considers reasonable in the circumstances, or
- (b) apply to the transfer of a school to a new site if at the time of transfer the school is intended to return to the existing site within three years.

101 Power to transfer functions under preceding provisions etc

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order provide for this Part of this Act to have effect with the modifications in subsections (2) to (7) below in relation to any proposals published by the governing body of a grant-maintained school under section 96 of this Act after the coming into force of the order.
- (2) The governing body shall submit a copy of the proposals to the funding authority as well as to the Secretary of State.
- (3) Any objections under subsection (6) of that section to the proposals shall be submitted to the funding authority instead of to the Secretary of State.
- (4) If any objection is made under subsection (6) of that section within the period allowed under that subsection and not withdrawn in writing within that period, then, not later than one month after the end of that period—
 - (a) the funding authority shall send to the Secretary of State copies of all such objections made (and not withdrawn in writing) together with their observations on them, and
 - (b) may themselves submit to the Secretary of State an objection to the proposals.
- (5) Sections 98(1) and 100(3) of this Act shall not apply to the proposals unless—
 - (a) the Secretary of State gives notice to the funding authority within two months after the submission to him of the published proposals that the proposals require his approval, or
 - (b) objections have been made under subsection (6) of section 96 of this Act within the period allowed under that subsection (unless all objections so made have been withdrawn in writing within that period).
- (6) Where sections 98(1) and 100(3) of this Act do not apply to the proposals—
 - (a) the proposals shall require the approval of the funding authority,
 - (b) the funding authority may reject them, approve them without modification or, after consulting the governing body, approve them with such modifications as they think desirable, and
 - (c) where the governing body are required to implement the proposals under section 100 of this Act, the funding authority may at their request modify the proposals.
- (7) Paragraph 20 of Schedule 2 to this Act shall not apply in relation to the proposals.
- (8) In this Part of this Act—
 - (a) references to approval under, or the requirements of, section 98 of this Act include approval under, or the requirements of, this section, and

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) references to the modification of proposals under section 100(3) of this Act include the modification of proposals under subsection (6)(c) above.
- (9) This section does not apply to proposals published under section 272 of this Act (to which this Chapter is applied by subsection (3)); and section 100(3) is not disapplied by this section in the case of proposals treated (by virtue of section 273(6) of this Act) for the purposes of this Part of this Act as if they had been approved under section 98 of this Act.

102 Proposals for change of character approved before school becomes grant-maintained

- (1) This section applies where—
 - (a) proposals for a change in the character or an enlargement of the premises of a county or voluntary school, or for the transfer of a county or voluntary school to a new site, have been approved under section 12 or 13 of the Education Act 1980, and
 - (b) the school becomes a grant-maintained school before the proposals are implemented.
- (2) The proposals—
 - (a) shall be treated for the purposes of this Part of this Act as if they had been published under section 97 and approved under section 98 of this Act, and
 - (b) shall be implemented in accordance with any particulars approved under section 14 of that Act.
- (3) Subsection (2) above is subject to section 47(1) to (4) of this Act.

103 Chapter VII: interpretation

- (1) References in this Part of this Act to a change in the character of a school include, in particular, changes in character resulting from—
 - (a) education beginning or ceasing to be provided for pupils above or below a particular age, for boys as well as girls or for girls as well as boys, or
 - (b) the making or alteration of arrangements for the admission of pupils by reference to ability or aptitude,
 but do not include such a change as is mentioned in subsection (2) below.
- (2) The change excluded by subsection (1) above is a change resulting only from persons beginning or ceasing to be provided with—
 - (a) part-time education suitable to the requirements of persons of any age over compulsory school age,
 - (b) part-time education suitable to the requirements of junior pupils who have not attained the age of five years where the school provides full-time education for junior pupils of the same age, or
 - (c) full-time education suitable to the requirements of persons who have attained the age of nineteen years.
- (3) References in this Chapter, where proposals for a significant change in the character, or significant enlargement of the premises, of a school or for the transfer of a school to a new site have been approved or adopted under section 98 of this Act, to the proposals

are references to the proposals as approved or adopted, subject to any modifications of the proposals under section 100(3) or (4) of this Act.

CHAPTER VIII

DISCONTINUANCE OF GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

Proposals for discontinuance

104 Proposals by governing body for discontinuance

- (1) The governing body of a grant-maintained school may publish proposals under this section for the discontinuance of the school if they—
 - (a) decide by a resolution passed at a meeting of that body to publish such proposals, and
 - (b) confirm that decision by a resolution passed at a subsequent meeting of the governing body held not less than twenty-eight days after that at which the first resolution was passed.
- (2) Before passing such a resolution as is mentioned in subsection (1)(a) above, the governing body shall consult such persons as appear to them to be appropriate; and in discharging their duty under this subsection, the governing body shall have regard to any guidance given to them from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (3) The governing body shall, as soon as practicable after the passing of the second resolution, give notice in writing of the second resolution to the local education authority.
- (4) The governing body may, within the period of six months beginning with the date of the second resolution, publish proposals for the discontinuance of the school in such manner as may be prescribed and, where they do so, shall submit to the Secretary of State a copy of the published proposals.
- (5) The published proposals shall specify the proposed date of discontinuance of the school.
- (6) The published proposals shall be accompanied by a statement—
 - (a) indicating whether or not there are any proposals for the premises of the school to be used by any new or existing school, and
 - (b) explaining the effect of subsection (7) below.
- (7) Within the period of two months beginning with the date of publication of the proposals, objections to the proposals may be submitted to the Secretary of State by any of the following—
 - (a) if the proposals affect the provision of education to which section 2(1) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 applies, the appropriate further education funding council,
 - (b) any ten or more local government electors,
 - (c) the governing body of any school affected by the proposals, and
 - (d) any local education authority concerned.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

105 Proposals by funding authority for discontinuance

- (1) This section has effect in respect of the area of a local education authority if an order under section 12(1) of this Act applies to the area.
- (2) The funding authority may publish, in such manner as may be prescribed, proposals for the discontinuance of any grant-maintained school and, where they do so, shall submit to the Secretary of State a copy of the published proposals.
- (3) The published proposals shall specify the proposed date of discontinuance of the school.
- (4) Before publishing any proposals under this section the funding authority shall consult—
 - (a) such persons as appear to them to be appropriate, and
 - (b) in the case of a Church of England, Church in Wales or Roman Catholic Church school having any foundation governor who is appointed by the appropriate diocesan authority, that authority;and in discharging their duty under paragraph (a) above, the funding authority shall have regard to any guidance given to them from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (5) The published proposals shall be accompanied by a statement—
 - (a) indicating whether or not there are any proposals for the premises of the school to be used by any new or existing school, and
 - (b) explaining the effect of subsection (6) below.
- (6) Within the period of two months beginning with the date of publication of the proposals, objections to the proposals may be submitted to the funding authority by any of the following—
 - (a) if the proposals affect the provision of education to which section 2(1) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 applies, the appropriate further education funding council,
 - (b) any ten or more local government electors,
 - (c) the governing body of the school to which the proposals relate,
 - (d) the governing body of any school affected by the proposals, and
 - (e) any local education authority concerned.
- (7) Not later than one month after the end of that period, the funding authority shall send to the Secretary of State copies of all such objections made (and not withdrawn in writing) together with their observations on them.

106 Approval, adoption or rejection of proposals

- (1) Proposals published under section 104 of this Act require the approval of the Secretary of State.
- (2) Proposals published under section 105 of this Act require the approval of the Secretary of State if—
 - (a) he gives notice to that effect to the funding authority within two months after the submission to him of the published proposals, or
 - (b) objections have been made under subsection (6) of that section within the period allowed under that subsection (unless all objections so made have been withdrawn in writing within that period).

- (3) Where under subsection (1) or (2) above any proposals require the approval of the Secretary of State, he may reject them, approve them without modification or, after consulting the governing body and, in the case of proposals published under section 105 of this Act, the funding authority, approve them with the substitution of a different date for the date of discontinuance proposed.
- (4) Where the Secretary of State approves any such proposals he shall give notice in writing of that fact and of the discontinuance date to the governing body and (except where the school is in Wales and the Schools Funding Council for Wales have not begun to exercise their functions) the funding authority.
- (5) Where proposals published under section 105 of this Act do not require the approval of the Secretary of State, the funding authority shall determine whether to adopt the proposals.
- (6) The funding authority shall—
 - (a) make any determination under subsection (5) above not later than four months after the publication of the proposals, and
 - (b) give notice in writing to the Secretary of State and the governing body of their determination and, if they adopt the proposals, of the discontinuance date.

107 Implementation of proposals

- (1) Where any proposals are approved under section 106 of this Act, the governing body shall cease to conduct the school on the discontinuance date.
- (2) In this section, “the discontinuance date” means—
 - (a) the date of discontinuance specified in the proposals as approved, or
 - (b) if—
 - (i) at the request of the governing body, or
 - (ii) in the case of proposals published under section 105 of this Act, at the request of the funding authority and after consulting the governing body,the Secretary of State subsequently fixes another date (whether in substitution for the date specified in the proposals as approved or in substitution for a date previously fixed under this subsection), that date.
- (3) The governing body of a grant-maintained school shall not discontinue the school except in pursuance of proposals published under section 104 or 105 of this Act and approved or adopted under section 106 of this Act.

108 Power to transfer functions under preceding provisions

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order provide for this Part of this Act to have effect with the modifications in subsections (2) to (7) below in relation to any proposals published by the governing body of a grant-maintained school under section 104 of this Act after the coming into force of the order.
- (2) The governing body shall submit a copy of the proposals to the funding authority as well as to the Secretary of State.
- (3) Any objections under subsection (7) of that section to the proposals shall be submitted to the funding authority instead of to the Secretary of State.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (4) If any objection is made under subsection (7) of that section within the period allowed under that subsection and not withdrawn in writing within that period, then, not later than one month after the end of that period—
 - (a) the funding authority shall send to the Secretary of State copies of all such objections made (and not withdrawn in writing) together with their observations on them, and
 - (b) may themselves submit to the Secretary of State an objection to the proposals.
- (5) Section 106(1) of this Act shall not apply to the proposals unless—
 - (a) the Secretary of State gives notice to the funding authority within two months after the submission to him of the published proposals that the proposals require his approval, or
 - (b) objections have been made under subsection (7) of section 104 of this Act within the period allowed under that subsection (unless all objections so made have been withdrawn in writing within that period).
- (6) Where section 106(1) of this Act does not apply to the proposals—
 - (a) the proposals shall require the approval of the funding authority,
 - (b) the funding authority may reject them, approve them without modification or, after consulting the governing body, approve them with the substitution of a different date for the date of discontinuance proposed,
 - (c) where the funding authority approve them, they shall give notice in writing of that fact and of the discontinuance date to the governing body, and
 - (d) the reference in section 107(2)(b) of this Act to the Secretary of State shall be read as a reference to the funding authority.
- (7) Paragraph 21(b) of Schedule 2 to this Act shall not apply in relation to the proposals.
- (8) References in this Part of this Act to approval under section 106 of this Act include approval under this section.

Withdrawal of grant

109 Withdrawal of grant where school is unsuitable to continue as grant-maintained school

- (1) This section applies where the Secretary of State is satisfied that a grant-maintained school as currently constituted or conducted is unsuitable to continue as a grant-maintained school on either or both of the following grounds—
 - (a) that the number of registered pupils at the school is too small for sufficient and suitable instruction to be provided for them at reasonable cost, and
 - (b) that the governing body have been guilty of substantial or persistent failure to comply or secure compliance with any other requirement imposed by or under this Act or any other enactment.
- (2) The Secretary of State may give to the governing body a notice in writing stating the grounds on which he considers that the school as currently constituted or conducted is unsuitable to continue as a grant-maintained school together with full particulars of the matters relevant to each such ground.

- (3) Where any of those matters are stated in the notice to be in the opinion of the Secretary of State irremediable, the notice shall also state that the funding authority's duty to maintain the school will cease on a date specified in the notice.
- (4) Where subsection (3) above does not apply, the notice shall—
 - (a) state that the funding authority's duty to maintain the school will cease unless the matters of which particulars are given in the notice are remedied,
 - (b) specify the measures necessary in the opinion of the Secretary of State to remedy those matters, and
 - (c) specify the time, not being less than six months after the date on which the notice is given to the governing body, within which the governing body are required to take those measures.
- (5) Where the governing body fail to take the measures required under subsection (4)(b) above by the notice within the time specified in the notice (or allowed by any previous notice under this subsection), the Secretary of State shall, within the period of two months beginning with the date next following the end of that time, either—
 - (a) give notice in writing to the governing body extending the time within which those measures are required to be taken, or
 - (b) after consulting the local education authority and, if the school provides education to which section 2(1) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 applies, the appropriate further education funding council, give notice in writing to the governing body that the funding authority's duty to maintain the school will cease on a specified date.
- (6) Where the Secretary of State gives a notice under subsection (2) or (5) above which states that the funding authority's duty to maintain the school will cease on a specified date—
 - (a) he shall give a copy of the notice to the funding authority, and
 - (b) the funding authority shall cease to be under a duty to make maintenance grants to the governing body of the school in respect of any period beginning on or after that date and shall cease on that date to have the power to pay capital or special purpose grant to the governing body.
- (7) In relation to a school in Wales before the Schools Funding Council for Wales have begun to exercise their functions, this section and section 110 of this Act shall have effect as if subsection (6)(a) above and section 110(4) and (5) were omitted.

110 Withdrawal or variation of notice under section 109

- (1) The Secretary of State may by giving notice in writing to the governing body—
 - (a) withdraw a notice under section 109(2) or (5)(b) of this Act,
 - (b) vary a notice under section 109(2) of this Act in relation to which section 109(3) of this Act applies or a notice under section 109(5)(b) of this Act by substituting another date for the date for the time being specified in the notice as the date on which the funding authority's duty to maintain the school will cease, or
 - (c) vary a notice under section 109(2) of this Act, so far as relates to any measures specified in it by virtue of section 109(4)(b) of this Act.
- (2) If by virtue of subsection (1)(c) above the Secretary of State varies a notice so as to require different measures to be taken, he shall also substitute for the time specified

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

in the notice by virtue of section 109(4)(c) of this Act a time which is not earlier than that time or, where the time so specified has been extended under section 109(5)(a) of this Act, than that time as so extended.

- (3) Any variation under subsection (2) above of the time specified in a notice is without prejudice to any further extension of that time under section 109(5)(a) of this Act.
- (4) Where the Secretary of State withdraws a notice by virtue of subsection (1)(a) above, he shall give notice in writing of that fact to the funding authority.
- (5) Where the Secretary of State varies a notice by virtue of subsection (1)(b) above, he shall give a copy of the notice as varied to the funding authority.

Winding up and disposal of property

111 Power to provide by order for winding-up and disposal of property

- (1) Where—
 - (a) proposals for the discontinuance of a grant-maintained school have been approved or adopted under section 106 of this Act, or
 - (b) the Secretary of State has given notice to the governing body of a grant-maintained school under section 109 of this Act specifying a date on which the funding authority's duty to maintain the school will cease,
 the Secretary of State may by order make provision for the winding up of the governing body and the disposal of the school property.
- (2) Subsections (3) to (7) below apply for the purposes of this section and sections 112 to 116 of this Act.
- (3) "Governing body in liquidation" means a governing body in respect of which any order has been made under this section.
- (4) "School property", in relation to a grant-maintained school conducted or formerly conducted by a governing body in liquidation, means—
 - (a) the premises used or formerly used for the purposes of the school,
 - (b) any interest belonging to the governing body, or held by any trustees on trust for the purposes of the school, in a dwelling house used or held or formerly used or held for occupation by a person employed to work at the school, and
 - (c) all other equipment and property used or held or formerly used or held for the purposes of the school (including any right to such property), except money and any investments to which section 116 of this Act applies.
- (5) References to a grant-maintained school formerly conducted by a governing body in liquidation apply in circumstances where the school has been discontinued before the dissolution date and refer to the school as conducted immediately before discontinuance (and "formerly" in subsection (4)(a) to (c) above applies in the same circumstances and refers to the time immediately before the discontinuance of the school concerned).
- (6) "Dissolution date", in relation to a governing body in liquidation or the grant-maintained school conducted or formerly conducted by such a body, means the date appointed in relation to that body by virtue of section 112(5) of this Act.

- (7) “Section 105 loan liabilities”, in relation to a governing body in liquidation, means any liabilities in respect of any loans made under section 105 of the Education Act 1944 (loans by Secretary of State towards initial capital expenditure of aided and special agreement schools) which were transferred to the governing body under section 38 of this Act.

112 Winding up

- (1) An order under section 111 of this Act may set out a proposed timetable for the winding up of the governing body and, in particular, for—
- (a) securing that all property belonging to the governing body or held by any trustees on trust for the purposes of the school is brought into the custody or control of that body or those trustees (as the case may require),
 - (b) discharging any liabilities of the governing body,
 - (c) making any provision mentioned in subsection (2) below, and
 - (d) the preparation and audit of the governing body’s final accounts.
- (2) The provision referred to in subsection (1)(c) above is provision authorised to be made—
- (a) by section 114 of this Act (for or in connection with the transfer of the school property), or
 - (b) by section 115 of this Act (in respect of the discharge of the liabilities of the governing body).
- (3) An order under section 111 of this Act may make provision as to the exercise of the governing body’s functions in relation to the school including, in particular—
- (a) provision requiring the governing body in the exercise of those functions to comply with any directions given by the Secretary of State,
 - (b) provision authorising any of those functions to be exercised by a member of the governing body specified in the order, and
 - (c) provision for the application of the seal of the governing body to be authenticated by the signature of a person specified in the order.
- (4) An order under section 111 of this Act—
- (a) may make provision for conferring or imposing functions on the governing body in relation to the winding up and the management and disposal of the school property, and
 - (b) may require the governing body to give to persons employed by them notice terminating their contracts of employment as from a date specified in the order.
- (5) Subject to subsection (6) below, an order under section 111 of this Act may appoint a date on which the governing body are to be dissolved.
- (6) The Secretary of State shall not appoint a dissolution date unless he is satisfied that—
- (a) all liabilities of the governing body (other than any section 105 loan liabilities which fall to be transferred or terminated under section 115 of this Act) have been discharged,
 - (b) all costs of the winding up have been met,
 - (c) any provision authorised by any of sections 114 to 116 of this Act which is possible and expedient in the circumstances of the case has been made, and

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (d) anything required to be done by the governing body for the purposes of or in connection with any such provision has been done.

113 Grants to governing body in liquidation

- (1) The funding authority may make grants to a governing body in liquidation for the purpose of—
 - (a) discharging any liabilities of that governing body (other than section 105 loan liabilities), and
 - (b) meeting any costs incurred by that governing body for the purposes of the winding up in pursuance of an order under section 111 of this Act.
- (2) The funding authority may impose on a governing body to whom such a payment is made such requirements as they may from time to time determine (whether before, at or after the time when the payment in question is made).

114 Disposal of school property

- (1) Subject to the provisions of any order under section 111 of this Act, any school property held by the governing body in liquidation immediately before the dissolution date, other than property held by them on trust for the purposes of the school, shall—
 - (a) in the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status, vest on that date in the local education authority, and
 - (b) in the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school, vest on that date in the funding authority.
- (2) Such an order may on such date as may be specified in the order as the transfer date vest the school property or any part of it in any person specified in the order and, where the order does so, it may provide for any property so vested to be held beneficially or on such trusts as may be specified in the order.
- (3) Where any school property is vested in any person other than the funding authority under subsection (1) above or is vested in pursuance of an order under section 111 of this Act, such an order may require the person in whom any property is so vested to pay in respect of the property to the Secretary of State or to such other person as may be so specified such consideration (not exceeding the maximum) as may be so specified.
- (4) Subsection (3) above does not apply to property held on trust for the purposes of the school otherwise than by the governing body; but where an order under section 111 of this Act vests property so held otherwise than by the governing body in any person the order shall require that person to pay to the trustees the maximum consideration in respect of the property.
- (5) The maximum consideration that may be specified in such an order in respect of any school property is—
 - (a) so far as the property consists of premises (including any interest in a dwelling-house such as is mentioned in section 111(4)(b) of this Act), such an amount as the Secretary of State determines to be the market value of the premises as at, or as at a date no earlier than six months before, the dissolution date or, as the case may be, the transfer date, and

- (b) so far as it consists of other property, such an amount as the Secretary of State determines to be a fair consideration for the transfer of that property.
- (6) Where such an order requires any person in whom any premises are vested to pay any consideration in respect of the premises, the order shall specify the amount determined by the Secretary of State under subsection (5)(a) above; and any dispute as to that amount may be referred to the Lands Tribunal by—
 - (a) the person in whom the premises are vested,
 - (b) the person from whom they are transferred, or
 - (c) the person to whom the consideration is to be paid,and shall then be determined by the Tribunal.
- (7) Where—
 - (a) by virtue of subsection (3) or (4) above such an order requires any person in whom any premises are vested to pay any consideration in respect of the premises, and
 - (b) on a reference under subsection (6) above the Lands Tribunal determine a different amount from that determined by the Secretary of State,he shall consider whether the amount of the consideration specified in the order requires alteration in the light of the determination of the Tribunal and, if it does, he shall vary the order accordingly.
- (8) Where—
 - (a) any school property has been vested in the funding authority, or a local education authority, under subsection (1) above and, in the case of property vested in the local education authority, no order under section 111 of this Act required them to pay any consideration in respect of the property, and
 - (b) the funding authority or local education authority subsequently dispose of the property so vested, or any part of it,the Secretary of State may require the authority concerned to pay to him or to such person as he may specify the whole or any part of the proceeds of the disposal.
- (9) Nothing in subsection (1) above or in any provision included in an order under section 111 of this Act by virtue of this section shall affect any interest or right of a person in, to or over any school property, being an interest or right which is held by that person otherwise than for the purposes of the school.

115 Disposal of school property: supplementary

- (1) Where by virtue of an order under section 111 of this Act the premises used or formerly used for the purposes of the school, or any part of those premises, are vested in persons proposing to establish a new independent school on the premises—
 - (a) such an order may require those persons to discharge any liabilities of the governing body in liquidation in respect of redundancy payments, and
 - (b) where the order does so, those liabilities shall be taken into account in determining the amount of consideration (if any) which those persons are required to pay by virtue of section 114(3) of this Act.
- (2) Subsection (1) above does not apply to any property held on trust for the purposes of the school otherwise than by the governing body.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

(3) Where the premises used or formerly used for the purposes of the school, or any part of those premises, are to be used for the purposes of a new or existing grant-maintained school, an order under section 111 of this Act may provide for the transfer to the governing body of the new or existing school of such rights or liabilities of the governing body in liquidation as were acquired or incurred in connection with the premises which are to be so used.

(4) If—

- (a) the school was an aided or special agreement school immediately before it became grant-maintained,
- (b) proposals have been approved under section 13 of the Education Act 1980 (establishment and alteration of voluntary schools) for the maintenance as a voluntary school of a school which is proposed to be established on the school premises, and
- (c) the Secretary of State has directed that the proposed school shall be an aided school,

any section 105 loan liabilities of the governing body in liquidation shall on the dissolution date be transferred to and become liabilities of the temporary governing body of the new school (subject to any variation of the terms applicable in relation to the loans in question immediately before that date that may be agreed between the Secretary of State and that governing body).

(5) If—

- (a) subsection (4)(a) and (b) above apply, but
- (b) no direction that the proposed school shall be an aided school has been given before the dissolution date,

any section 105 loan liabilities of the governing body shall be terminated on that date.

(6) If—

- (a) any liabilities of the governing body have been terminated by virtue of subsection (5) above, and
- (b) a new voluntary school is established in pursuance of any proposals approved under section 13 of the Education Act 1980 on the school premises,

the amount of those liabilities shall be treated for the purposes of section 14 of the Education Act 1944 (restrictions on discontinuance of voluntary schools by governors) as expenditure incurred by the Secretary of State (otherwise than in connection with repairs) in respect of the premises of the new school.

116 Surplus money and investments

(1) Subject to the following provisions of this section—

- (a) any money held by or for a governing body in liquidation (whether in cash or to their account at or on deposit with any bank or other institution), and
- (b) any investments to which this section applies held by or for such a governing body,

shall, after discharge of the liabilities and costs mentioned in subsection (2) below, be paid or (as the case may be) transferred by the governing body to the Secretary of State.

(2) The liabilities and costs referred to in subsection (1) above are—

- (a) all the liabilities of the governing body in liquidation (other than any not required to be discharged before the dissolution date is appointed), and

- (b) all costs of the winding up.
- (3) Where the Secretary of State is satisfied as to the whole or any part of any such money or as to any such investments—
 - (a) that the money or that part of it was derived or (as the case may be) those investments were acquired otherwise than from grants paid by him or the funding authority under this Part of this Act, and
 - (b) that it ought to be paid, or the investments ought to be transferred, to a local education authority or to some other person,he may require the governing body to pay the money or (as the case may be) an amount equal to the part in question, or to transfer those investments, to such local education authority or other person as he may specify, either beneficially or to be held on trust for such purposes as he may specify.
- (4) Where the premises of the school are to be used for the purposes of a new or existing grant-maintained school, the Secretary of State may require the governing body in liquidation, after discharge of the liabilities mentioned in subsection (2) above—
 - (a) to pay any money held by or for them, and
 - (b) to transfer any investments to which this section applies held by or for them, to the governing body of the new or existing grant-maintained school, either beneficially or to be held on trust for such purposes as he may specify.
- (5) Without prejudice to the powers of the Secretary of State under subsections (3) and (4) above, any payment of money or transfer of investments under this section shall be free of any trusts on which the money or investments are held by the governing body before the payment or transfer is made.
- (6) This section applies to any investment within the meaning of the Financial Services Act 1986 which falls within—
 - (a) any of paragraphs 1 to 6 of Schedule 1 to that Act (investments and investment business), or
 - (b) paragraph 11 of that Schedule, so far as referring to investments falling within any of paragraphs 1 to 6.
- (7) References in subsection (6) above to any paragraphs of Schedule 1 to the Financial Services Act 1986 include references to those paragraphs as amended by any order under section 2 of that Act (power to extend or restrict scope of Act) which amends those paragraphs for the purposes of all the provisions of that Act.

CHAPTER IX

GROUPS OF GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

117 Nature of group

- (1) Subject to the provisions of this Chapter, two or more grant-maintained schools may be conducted as a group by a single governing body.
- (2) In the case of such a group—
 - (a) there shall be an instrument (to be known as the instrument of government) providing for the constitution of the governing body, and

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) for each school in the group there shall be an instrument (to be known as the articles of government) in accordance with which the school is to be conducted.
- (3) The instrument and articles of government—
 - (a) shall comply with any requirements imposed by or under this Chapter, and
 - (b) may make any provision authorised by or under this Chapter to be made and such other provision as may be necessary or desirable.
- (4) Subject to any express provision of the instrument or articles of government, each school in such a group shall be conducted in accordance with any trust deed relating to it.
- (5) Schedules 5 and 6 to this Act shall have effect in relation to groups of grant-maintained schools with such modifications as may be prescribed.
- (6) Subject to any provision made by or under this Chapter, where there is a group of grant-maintained schools any provision of an enactment which applies to such schools shall apply separately in relation to each of the schools.
- (7) References in this Chapter to a group are to a group of grant-maintained schools conducted, or to be conducted, by a single governing body.

118 Instruments and articles of government for group

- (1) The initial instrument of government for the governing body of a group and the initial articles of government for each school in the group shall be such as are prescribed.
- (2) The initial instrument of government shall have effect as from the date on which the governing body are incorporated.
- (3) The initial articles of government shall have effect as from the date of implementation of the proposals in pursuance of which the school became a member of the group.
- (4) Section 57 of this Act shall apply in relation to the governing body of a group as it applies in relation to the governing body of a grant-maintained school.
- (5) Section 58 of this Act shall apply in relation to a school in a group as it applies in relation to other grant-maintained schools.

119 Parent governors

- (1) The instrument of government for the governing body of a group shall provide for the governing body to include parent governors.
- (2) The number of parent governors shall not be—
 - (a) less than three, or
 - (b) subject to paragraph (a) above, more than the number of schools in the group.
- (3) Subject to subsection (6) below, the parent governors shall be elected by persons who are registered parents of registered pupils at schools in the group, but, if any of the schools in the group is established in a hospital, the instrument may provide for any of the parent governors to be appointed by the other members of the governing body.
- (4) To qualify for such election a person must himself when he is elected be a registered parent of a registered pupil at one of the schools in the group and, to qualify for such

appointment, a person must when he is appointed be such a parent or, if that is not reasonably practicable, a parent of one or more children of compulsory school age.

- (5) The instrument shall provide for each parent governor to hold office for a term of four years.
- (6) The instrument shall provide that if—
 - (a) one or more vacancies for parent governors are required to be filled by election, and
 - (b) the number of parents standing for election as parent governors is less than the number of vacancies,the required number of parent governors shall be made up by persons appointed by the other members of the governing body.
- (7) The instrument shall require governors, in appointing a person under a provision made by virtue of subsection (6) above—
 - (a) to appoint a person who is the registered parent of a registered pupil at one of the schools in the group, where it is reasonably practicable to do so, and
 - (b) where it is not, to appoint a person who is the parent of one or more children of compulsory school age.

120 Teacher governors

- (1) The instrument of government for the governing body of a group shall provide for the governing body to include either one or two teacher governors.
- (2) Each teacher governor shall be elected by persons who are teachers at schools in the group.
- (3) To qualify for such election, a person must himself when he is elected be a teacher at one of the schools in the group.
- (4) The instrument shall provide for each teacher governor to hold office for a term of four years.

121 Head teacher governors

The instrument of government for the governing body of a group shall provide for the head teacher of each school in the group to be an ex officio governor, unless he chooses not to be.

122 Core governors

- (1) The instrument of government for the governing body of a group shall provide for the governing body to include core governors.
- (2) Schedule 8 to this Act (which makes provision in relation to core governors for groups) shall have effect.
- (3) The instrument shall provide for core governors to hold office for such term (not being less than five nor more than seven years) as may be specified in the instrument.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

123 Power of the Secretary of State to replace core governors

- (1) The instrument of government for the governing body of a group shall provide for the Secretary of State to have power, where any of subsections (2) to (4) below apply, to replace all or any of the core governors, other than any externally appointed core governor appointed in respect of a particular school.
- (2) This subsection applies where the governing body have been guilty of substantial or persistent failure to comply or secure compliance with any requirement imposed by or under any enactment.
- (3) This subsection applies where—
 - (a) there is a report of an inspection of any of the schools in which the person who made it expressed the opinion that special measures were required to be taken in relation to the school,
 - (b) either that person was a member of the Inspectorate or the report stated that the Chief Inspector agreed with his opinion,
 - (c) if any registered inspector or member of the Inspectorate has made a later report of an inspection of the school under Chapter I of Part V of this Act, he did not express the opinion in the report that special measures were not required to be taken in relation to the school, and
 - (d) the Secretary of State has received a statement prepared under section 210 of this Act or the period allowed by subsection (2) of that section for the preparation of such a statement has expired;and expressions used in this subsection and in that Part have the same meaning as in that Part.
- (4) This subsection applies where in the opinion of the Secretary of State any action taken or proposed by the governing body or any failure of the governing body to act is prejudicial to the provision of education by any of the schools.
- (5) The instrument of government shall enable the Secretary of State to make such provision as he thinks fit for filling vacancies for core governors other than externally appointed governors if it appears to him that the governing body are unable or unwilling to fill the vacancies.
- (6) Any provision made by the instrument of government in pursuance of Schedule 8 to this Act shall not apply for the purposes of the appointment by virtue of this section of any core governor.

124 Additional governors

- (1) The instrument of government for the governing body of a group shall enable the Secretary of State to appoint not more than two additional governors if it appears to him that the governing body are not adequately carrying out their responsibilities in respect of the conduct or management of any of the schools in the group.
- (2) The instrument shall enable the governing body, during any period when any additional governors appointed by the Secretary of State by virtue of subsection (1) above are in office, to appoint a number of additional core governors not greater than the number of additional governors appointed by the Secretary of State who are then in office.

- (3) Section 122(3) of this Act and Schedule 8 to this Act do not apply to additional core governors.

125 Powers

In the case of a group of grant-maintained schools conducted by a single governing body, that body shall have in relation to each of the schools the powers conferred by section 68 of this Act on the governing body of a grant-maintained school.

126 Application of maintenance grants in the case of groups

- (1) For each financial year the governing body of a group shall apply for the purposes of each school in the group the share of maintenance grant which is attributable to that school.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) above, in each financial year the share of maintenance grant which is attributable to each school in a group is the amount which in the case of that school is the prescribed percentage of the maintenance grant payable in respect of the school.
- (3) The governing body of a group shall not apply otherwise than for the purposes of schools in the group any payments made to them in respect of maintenance grant.
- (4) This section is subject to—
 - (a) any requirements imposed under section 84(1) or, as the case may be, 90(1) of this Act, and
 - (b) any requirements as to the application of maintenance grant contained in the articles of government for any of the schools.
- (5) In relation to groups of grant-maintained schools, this section has effect in place of section 81(3) or, as the case may be, 87(2) of this Act.

127 School acquiring grant-maintained status as a member of a group, etc

- (1) Regulations may make provision—
 - (a) for two or more schools, each of which is eligible for grant-maintained status and satisfies the prescribed requirements, to become grant-maintained schools conducted by a single governing body,
 - (b) for two or more grant-maintained schools, each of which is not a member of a group and satisfies the prescribed requirements, to become a new group conducted by a single governing body,
 - (c) for a school which is eligible for grant-maintained status, or is a grant-maintained school, and satisfies the prescribed requirements to become a member of an existing group,
 - (d) for the schools in two or more existing groups, where each of the schools satisfies the prescribed requirements, to become one group, and
 - (e) for a school in a group, where the school satisfies the prescribed requirements, to leave the group but continue to be a grant-maintained school (whether as a member of a group or not).
- (2) Regulations shall require in the case of each school which is not a grant-maintained school but is to acquire grant-maintained status as a member of a group—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) a resolution of the existing governing body to hold a ballot of parents on the question of whether grant-maintained status as a member of a group should be sought for the school,
 - (b) a ballot of parents at the school,
 - (c) the publication by the existing governing body (together with the existing governing bodies of any other schools which are to acquire grant-maintained status as members of the same group) of proposals for the schools to acquire grant-maintained status and be conducted by a single governing body, and
 - (d) the approval of such proposals, as originally published or as modified by the Secretary of State (whether before or after they are approved).
- (3) Regulations shall require in the case of each grant-maintained school which is not a member of a group but is to become a member of a new group—
 - (a) a resolution for the purpose of the existing governing body,
 - (b) the publication by the existing governing body (together with the governing bodies of any other schools which are to become members of the group) of proposals for the schools to become a new group conducted by a single governing body, and
 - (c) the approval of such proposals, as originally published or as modified by the Secretary of State (whether before or after they are approved).
- (4) Regulations made by virtue of subsection (2) or (3) above shall not enable the Secretary of State to modify any proposals after approving them so as to exclude any school to which they relate; and where under such regulations the Secretary of State modifies any proposals so as to exclude any school to which they relate—
 - (a) he may not approve them without the consent of the existing governing bodies of the schools to which the proposals as modified relate, and
 - (b) if he approves them, the regulations shall have effect as if the proposals as published had related only to those schools.
- (5) Where proposals for the purposes of subsection (1)(a) or (b) above are approved, regulations shall provide—
 - (a) for the determination of the persons who are to be the initial members of the governing body,
 - (b) for their incorporation, and
 - (c) for sections 119 to 123 of this Act, Schedule 8 to this Act and the instrument of government to have effect in relation to any person who becomes a member of the governing body—
 - (i) before the date of implementation of the proposals, or
 - (ii) before the date on which the first instrument under section 57(1) of this Act for the governing body comes into effect,
 with such modifications as may be prescribed.
- (6) Where proposals for the purposes of subsection (1)(a) above in relation to any schools, or proposals for the purposes of subsection (1)(c) above in relation to a school which is eligible for grant-maintained status, are approved, regulations shall provide in relation to each of the schools—
 - (a) for the local education authority to cease to be under a duty to maintain the school,
 - (b) for any special agreement relating to the school to cease to have effect, and

- (c) for the functions, during the period beginning with the approval of the proposals and ending with their implementation, of the governing body incorporated under the regulations.
- (7) Where proposals for the purposes of subsection (1)(b) above are approved, regulations shall provide for the functions, during the period beginning with the approval of the proposals and ending with their implementation, of the governing body incorporated under the regulations.
- (8) In relation to—
 - (a) any schools seeking to acquire grant-maintained status as a group or grant-maintained schools seeking to become a new group,
 - (b) any school seeking to become a member of an existing group, and
 - (c) schools in a group,regulations may provide for any provision of this Part of this Act, other than this Chapter, to apply with such modifications as may be prescribed.
- (9) Regulations may make provision for the governing body of a group to be reconstituted where any change occurs in the membership of the group.
- (10) The Secretary of State may instead of, or in addition to, prescribing requirements for the purposes of subsection (1) above issue guidance as to the requirements he would expect to be satisfied for any application—
 - (a) for any maintained schools, or grant-maintained schools, to become a new group,
 - (b) to join or leave a group, or
 - (c) for the merger of groups,to be approved.
- (11) This section does not apply to nursery schools.

CHAPTER X

GENERAL AND MISCELLANEOUS

Further education

128 Provision of further education in grant-maintained schools

It shall be the duty of the governing body of any grant-maintained school which provides—

- (a) part-time education suitable to the requirements of persons of any age over compulsory school age, or
- (b) full-time education suitable to the requirements of persons who have attained the age of nineteen years,

to secure that it is not provided at any time in a room where pupils are at that time being taught except in such circumstances as may be prescribed.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

Provision of benefits and services by local education authority

129 Provision of benefits and services for pupils by local education authority

(1) Where—

- (a) a local education authority are under a duty, or have power, to provide any benefits or services for pupils, and
- (b) the duty is to be performed, or the power may be exercised, both in relation to pupils at schools maintained by a local education authority and in relation to pupils at grant-maintained schools,

the authority shall in performing the duty, or exercising the power, treat pupils at grant-maintained schools no less favourably (whether as to the benefits or services provided or as to the terms on which they are provided) than pupils at schools maintained by a local education authority.

(2) Where—

- (a) a local education authority are under a duty, or have power, to provide any benefits or services for persons, other than pupils, receiving education at a school, and
- (b) the duty is to be performed, or the power may be exercised, both in relation to such persons at schools maintained by a local education authority and in relation to such persons at grant-maintained schools,

the authority shall in performing the duty, or in exercising the power, treat such persons at grant-maintained schools no less favourably (whether as to the benefits or services provided or as to the terms on which they are provided) than such persons at schools maintained by a local education authority.

Transfer and disposal of premises

130 Transfer of premises to trustees

- (1) Where grant under section 53(2) of this Act or capital grant is paid to the governing body of a grant-maintained school established in pursuance of proposals published under section 49 of this Act in respect of the provision of a site for the school or of school buildings, a requirement shall be imposed under section 53 or, as the case may be, Chapter VI for the purpose of securing that the site or buildings in question are held on trust by trustees of the school.

(2) Where buildings are to be provided for any grant-maintained school which are to—

- (a) form part of the school premises, and
- (b) be constructed partly on land held by the governing body and partly on land held on trust for the purposes of the school by persons other than the governing body,

the governing body shall transfer to those persons the land held by the governing body on which the buildings are to be constructed; and section 68(7)(b) of this Act does not apply to a transfer required by this subsection.

- (3) In this section “site” does not include playing fields.

131 Disposal of premises on transfer of school to new site

- (1) Where—
- (a) the funding authority pay capital grant in respect of a transfer of a grant-maintained school to a new site authorised under Chapter VII, and
 - (b) the governing body or any trustees of the school possess, or are or may become entitled to, a sum representing the proceeds of disposal of other premises which have been used for the purposes of the school,
- the governing body or (as the case may be) the trustees or their successors shall pay to the Secretary of State the whole of that sum, if it is equal to or less than the amount of the capital grant, and otherwise so much of it as is required to repay that amount.
- (2) Any sum paid under subsection (1) above shall, in a case where any interest in the new site has vested in any trustees of the school, be treated for the purposes of section 14 of the Schools Sites Act 1841 (which relates to the sale or exchange of land held on trust for the purposes of a school) as a sum applied in the purchase of a site for the school.
- (3) Where trustees of a grant-maintained school are required to pay any sum to the Secretary of State under subsection (1) above in a case where any interest in the new site is or is to be held by the governing body, then—
- (a) if the interest or, as the case may be, all the interests held by any persons for the purposes of the school in the previous site were freehold interests held by the trustees, the governing body shall transfer their interest in the new site to the trustees, and
 - (b) if in any other case the trustees held any interest in the previous site, the governing body shall if directed to do so by the Secretary of State transfer to the trustees their interest in the whole of the new site or such part of it as may be specified in the direction.
- (4) Where trustees of a grant-maintained school are required to pay any sum to the Secretary of State under subsection (1) above in a case in which they may also be required to pay any sum to a local education authority under paragraph 8 of the First Schedule to the Education Act 1946 in respect of the disposal of the same premises, that paragraph shall have effect as if—
- (a) in relation to that disposal, the reference to the purchase money paid in respect of the acquisition of the premises were a reference to so much of the amount of that purchase money as remains after deducting the amount of the payment under subsection (1) above, and
 - (b) any premises transferred to the trustees in pursuance of subsection (3) above were premises conveyed by the authority as mentioned in that paragraph.
- (5) In subsection (3)(a) above “site” does not include playing fields.

132 Disposal of premises transferred under section 38

- (1) This section applies where the governing body of a grant-maintained school apply to the Secretary of State for his consent to the disposal of—
- (a) any premises transferred to the governing body under section 38(1)(a) of this Act, or
 - (b) any premises acquired wholly or partly with the proceeds of the disposal of any premises so transferred or of any premises so acquired.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3) below, the Secretary of State may—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) require the premises or any part of the premises to be transferred to such local authority as the Secretary of State may specify, subject to the payment by that authority of such sum by way of consideration (if any) as he determines to be appropriate, or
 - (b) where he does not impose a requirement under paragraph (a) above, require the governing body when the premises are disposed of to pay to such local authority as the Secretary of State may specify the whole or any part of the proceeds of disposal.
- (3) Where the occasion of the disposal is a transfer of the school to a new site in respect of which the funding authority have paid capital grant—
 - (a) no requirement shall be imposed under subsection (2)(a) above, and
 - (b) the reference in subsection (2)(b) above to the proceeds of disposal shall be read as a reference to such part (if any) of those proceeds as remains after repayment of the amount of that capital grant in accordance with section 131 of this Act.

133 Disposal of premises held by trustees

- (1) This section applies where any premises—
 - (a) transferred to the governing body of a grant-maintained school under section 38(1)(a) of this Act, or
 - (b) acquired by such a governing body wholly or partly with the proceeds of the disposal of any premises so transferred or of any premises so acquired,
 have been transferred by them to be held on trust by the trustees of the school.
- (2) If at any time the trustees dispose of the premises the Secretary of State may require them to pay to such local authority as he may specify the whole or any part of the proceeds of the disposal.

134 Disposal of premises provided, etc. by the funding authority

- (1) Where the governing body of a grant-maintained school apply to the Secretary of State for his consent to the disposal of—
 - (a) any premises provided by the funding authority, or
 - (b) any premises acquired wholly or partly with the proceeds of the disposal of any premises so provided or of any premises so acquired,
 the Secretary of State may require the governing body when the premises are disposed of to pay to him or to the funding authority the whole or any part of the proceeds of disposal.
- (2) Where—
 - (a) any premises falling within subsection (1)(a) or (b) above are transferred by the governing body to be held on trust by the trustees of the school, or
 - (b) any premises in respect of which capital grant was paid are transferred by the governing body (otherwise than in pursuance of a requirement imposed in accordance with section 130 of this Act or in pursuance of section 131(3) of this Act) to be held on trust by the trustees of the school,
 then, if at any time the trustees dispose of the premises, the Secretary of State may require them to pay to him or to the funding authority the whole or any part of the proceeds of the disposal.

135 Interpretation of sections 130 to 134

- (1) For the purposes of sections 131 and 132 of this Act, the funding authority are to be regarded as paying capital grant in respect of the transfer of a school to a new site if they pay capital grant in respect of the acquisition of the new site or the provision on that site of the school buildings or of any other buildings forming part of the new school premises.
- (2) In sections 130 to 134 of this Act “trustees of the school” means any person (other than the governing body) holding property on trust for the purposes of the school.
- (3) For the purposes of sections 131 to 134 of this Act—
 - (a) a governing body or trustees are to be regarded as disposing of any premises if those premises are acquired from them, whether compulsorily or otherwise, and
 - (b) “proceeds of disposal”, in relation to a disposal of premises by a governing body or trustees, means the compensation or purchase money paid in respect of the acquisition from them of those premises.
- (4) In subsection (3) above—
 - (a) references to the acquisition of premises from a governing body or trustees include, in the case of any premises held under a tenancy to which Part II of the Landlord and Tenant Act 1954 (“the 1954 Act”) applies, the termination of that tenancy under that Part of that Act, and
 - (b) the reference to the purchase money paid in respect of such an acquisition includes any compensation paid by the landlord on the quitting of any such premises by the governing body or trustees (whether or not the compensation is required to be paid by section 37 of that Act (compensation where order for new tenancy precluded on certain grounds)).
- (5) In subsection (4) above, expressions to which a meaning is given for the purposes of the 1954 Act have the same meaning as in that Act.

Modification of instruments

136 Variation of trust deeds etc. by order

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order make such modifications of any trust deed or other instrument relating to a school as, after consultation with the governing body of the school and the trustees (if any), appear to him to be requisite—
 - (a) in consequence of the approval of proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status for the school,
 - (b) for removing any inconsistency between the provisions of that trust deed or other instrument and any provisions included or proposed to be included in any instrument or articles of government made for the school under Chapter V, or any scheme under section 69 of this Act, which it appears to him to be expedient to remove in the interests of the school, or
 - (c) in consequence of any proposals as to a change in the character or an enlargement of the premises of the school or a transfer of the school to a new site which fall to be implemented under section 100 of this Act.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by order make such modifications of any trust deed or other instrument relating to an independent school where proposals have been approved for

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

the establishment of a grant-maintained school in its place as, after consultation with the promoters and the trustees (if any), appear to him to be requisite—

- (a) in consequence of the approval of the proposals, or
 - (b) for removing any inconsistency between the provisions of that trust deed or other instrument and any provisions included or proposed to be included in any instrument or articles of government made for the grant-maintained school under Chapter V which it appears to him to be expedient to remove in the interests of the school.
- (3) Any modification made by an order under this section may be made to have permanent effect or to have effect for such period as may be specified in the order.

137 Modification of instruments relating to land held for purposes of voluntary schools

Any provision of an instrument relating to any land held for the purposes of a voluntary school which—

- (a) confers on any person an option to acquire an interest in that land, or
- (b) provides (in whatever terms) for the determination or forfeiture of any such interest,

in the event of the school's ceasing to be a voluntary school or (as the case may be) ceasing to be maintained by a specified local education authority shall, if the school becomes a grant-maintained school, have effect as if the event referred to were the school's ceasing to be a school which is either a grant-maintained school or a voluntary school.

Religious education, worship etc.: classes of grant-maintained school

138 Former county schools and certain schools established as grant-maintained schools

- (1) Subject to section 141 of this Act, this section applies in relation to a grant-maintained school if—
- (a) it was a county school immediately before it became grant-maintained,
 - (b) it was established in pursuance of proposals published under section 48 of this Act, or
 - (c) it was established in pursuance of proposals published under section 49 of this Act and neither any trust deed relating to the school nor the statement required by paragraph 8 of Schedule 3 to this Act makes provision as to the religious education for pupils at the school.
- (2) Subject to the following provisions of this section, in the case of a school to which this section applies the collective worship required in the school by section 6 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (collective worship) shall be wholly or mainly of a broadly Christian character.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2) above, collective worship is of a broadly Christian character if it reflects the broad traditions of Christian belief without being distinctive of any particular Christian denomination.
- (4) Every act of collective worship required by section 6 of that Act in the case of a school to which this section applies need not comply with subsection (2) above provided that,

taking any school term as a whole, most such acts which take place in the school do comply with that subsection.

(5) Subject to subsections (2) and (4) above—

- (a) the extent to which (if at all) any acts of collective worship required by section 6 of that Act which do not comply with subsection (2) above take place in such a school,
- (b) the extent to which any act of collective worship in such a school which complies with subsection (2) above reflects the broad traditions of Christian belief, and
- (c) the ways in which those traditions are reflected in any such act of collective worship,

shall be such as may be appropriate having regard to any relevant considerations relating to the pupils concerned which fall to be taken into account in accordance with subsection (6) below.

(6) Those considerations are—

- (a) any circumstances relating to the family backgrounds of the pupils concerned which are relevant for determining the character of the collective worship which is appropriate in their case, and
- (b) their ages and aptitudes.

(7) Where under section 12 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (determination by standing advisory councils of the cases in which the requirement for Christian worship is not to apply) a standing advisory council on religious education determine that it is not appropriate for subsection (2) above to apply in the case of a school to which this section applies, or in the case of any class or description of pupils at such a school (or where they had so determined in the case of a school or pupils at a school before it became grant-maintained) then, so long as that determination has effect—

- (a) that subsection shall not apply in relation to that school or (as the case may be) in relation to those pupils, and
- (b) the collective worship required by section 6 of that Act (collective worship) in the case of that school or those pupils shall not be distinctive of any particular Christian or other religious denomination (but this shall not be taken as preventing that worship from being distinctive of any particular faith).

(8) The arrangements for collective worship in a school to which this section applies required by section 6 of that Act shall be made by the head teacher after consultation with the governing body.

(9) The provision for religious education for pupils at the school which is required by section 2(1)(a) of that Act (basic curriculum for schools) shall be provision for religious education in accordance with the appropriate agreed syllabus.

(10) That syllabus shall not provide for religious education to be given to pupils at the school by means of any catechism or formulary which is distinctive of a particular religious denomination (but this is not to be taken as prohibiting provision in the syllabus for the study of such catechisms or formularies).

(11) If, in the case of a secondary school so situated that arrangements cannot conveniently be made for the withdrawal of pupils from it in accordance with section 9 of that Act (religious education - exceptions etc.) to receive religious education elsewhere, the governing body are satisfied—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) that the parents of any pupils at the school desire them to receive religious education in the school in accordance with the tenets of a particular religion or religious denomination, and
- (b) that satisfactory arrangements have been made for the provision of such education to those pupils in the school, and for securing that the cost of providing such education to those pupils in the school will not fall upon the governing body,

the governing body shall (unless they are satisfied that because of any special circumstances it would be unreasonable to do so) provide facilities for the carrying out of those arrangements.

- (12) References in this section to acts of collective worship in a school to which this section applies include references to any such act which under section 6 of that Act takes place otherwise than on the school premises.

139 Former controlled schools

- (1) Subject to section 141 of this Act, this section applies in relation to a grant-maintained school which was a controlled school immediately before it became grant-maintained.
- (2) The provision for religious education for pupils at the school which is required by section 2(1)(a) of the Education Reform Act 1988 to be included in the school's basic curriculum shall be provision for religious education—
 - (a) in accordance with any arrangements made under subsection (3) below, or
 - (b) subject to any such arrangements, in accordance with the appropriate agreed syllabus.
- (3) Where the parents of any pupils at the school have requested (whether before or after the school became grant-maintained) that the pupils may receive religious education—
 - (a) in accordance with any provisions of the trust deed relating to the school, or
 - (b) where provision for that purpose is not made by such a deed, in accordance with the practice observed in the school before it became a grant-maintained school,

the foundation governors shall (unless they are satisfied that because of any special circumstances it would be unreasonable to do so) make arrangements for securing that such religious education is given to those pupils in the school during not more than two periods in each week.

140 Former aided or special agreement schools and certain schools established as grant-maintained schools

- (1) Subject to section 141 of this Act, this section applies in relation to a grant-maintained school if—
 - (a) it was an aided or special agreement school immediately before it became grant-maintained, or
 - (b) it was established in pursuance of proposals published under section 49 of this Act and either any trust deed relating to the school or the statement required by paragraph 8 of Schedule 3 to this Act makes provision as to the religious education for pupils at the school.

- (2) The provision for religious education for pupils at the school which is required by section 2(1)(a) of the Education Reform Act 1988 to be included in the school's basic curriculum shall be provision for religious education—
- (a) in accordance with any provisions of any trust deed relating to the school or, where provision for that purpose is not made by such a deed—
 - (i) in the case of a former aided or special agreement school, in accordance with the practice observed in the school before it became a grant-maintained school, or
 - (ii) in the case of a school established in pursuance of proposals published under section 49 of this Act, in accordance with the statement required by paragraph 8 of Schedule 3 to this Act, or
 - (b) in accordance with any arrangements made under subsection (3) below.
- (3) Where the parents of any pupils at the school—
- (a) desire them to receive religious education in accordance with any agreed syllabus adopted by the local education authority for the area in which the school is situated for use in schools maintained by the authority, and
 - (b) cannot with reasonable convenience cause those pupils to attend a school at which that syllabus is in use,
- the governing body shall (unless they are satisfied that because of any special circumstances it would be unreasonable to do so) make arrangements for religious education in accordance with that syllabus to be given to those pupils in the school.
- (4) Religious education under any such arrangements shall be given during the times set apart for the giving of religious education in the school in accordance with the provision for that purpose included in the school's basic curriculum by virtue of section 2(1)(a) of the Education Reform Act 1988.
- (5) The head teacher of a school to which this section applies shall give notice in writing to the council constituted under section 11 of that Act (standing advisory councils on religious education) by the local education authority in whose area the school is of any agreed syllabus which is in use at the school in accordance with subsection (3) above.

141 Changes in religious education and worship

- (1) Subsection (2) below applies where, in the case of a school in relation to which section 138 or 139 of this Act for the time being applies, proposals that the required provision for religious education should be provision for religious education in accordance with the tenets of a particular religion or religious denomination are approved under section 98 of this Act.
- (2) From the time at which the proposals fall to be implemented—
- (a) the required provision for religious education shall (subject to subsection (3) below) be provision for religious education either in accordance with the tenets of that religion or religious denomination or in accordance with any arrangements made under section 140(3) of this Act (as applied by paragraph (b) below),
 - (b) section 140(3) to (5) of this Act shall apply in relation to the school, and
 - (c) any provisions of section 138 or 139 of this Act which apply in relation to the school shall cease to apply in relation to it.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (3) Where, in the case of any grant-maintained school, proposals that the required provision for religious education should be provision for religious education otherwise than in accordance with the tenets of a particular religion or religious denomination are approved under section 98 of this Act—
- (a) section 138 of this Act shall apply in relation to the school from the time at which the proposals fall to be implemented, and
 - (b) any provisions of section 139 or 140 of this Act which apply in relation to the school shall cease to apply in relation to it from that time.
- (4) In this section, “the required provision for religious education”, in relation to a school, means the provision for religious education for pupils at the school which is required by section 2(1)(a) of the Education Reform Act 1988 to be included in the school’s basic curriculum.

142 Meaning of “the appropriate agreed syllabus” in sections 138 and 139

- (1) For the purposes of sections 138(9) and 139(2) of this Act, “the appropriate agreed syllabus”, in relation to a grant-maintained school or to any pupils at it, is—
- (a) the agreed syllabus adopted or deemed to be adopted for the time being by the local education authority for the area in which the school is situated for use in the schools maintained by the authority,
 - (b) if there is more than one such syllabus, whichever of them the governing body shall determine, or
 - (c) if the governing body select for the school or those pupils an agreed syllabus which was adopted or deemed to be adopted by a local education authority, other than the authority in whose area the school is, on or after 29th September 1988 and which has not been replaced by a new agreed syllabus, that syllabus.
- (2) In relation to a school in Wales, in subsection (1)(c) above “local education authority” means a local education authority in Wales.

Religious education, worship etc.: religious opinions etc. of staff

143 Former county schools and certain schools established as grant-maintained schools

- (1) Subject to section 145 of this Act, subsections (2) to (4) below apply in relation to a grant-maintained school if—
- (a) it was a county school immediately before it became grant-maintained,
 - (b) it was established in pursuance of proposals published under section 48 of this Act, or
 - (c) it was established in pursuance of proposals published under section 49 of this Act and neither any trust deed relating to the school nor the statement required by paragraph 8 of Schedule 3 to this Act makes provision as to the religious education for pupils at the school.
- (2) No person shall be disqualified by reason of his religious opinions, or of his attending or omitting to attend religious worship—
- (a) for being a teacher at the school, or
 - (b) for being employed (otherwise than as a teacher) for the purposes of the school.

- (3) No teacher at the school shall be required to give religious education.
- (4) No teacher at the school shall receive any less emolument or be deprived of, or disqualified for, any promotion or other advantage—
 - (a) by reason of the fact that he does or does not give religious education, or
 - (b) by reason of his religious opinions or of his attending or omitting to attend religious worship.

144 Former voluntary schools and certain schools established as grant-maintained schools

- (1) Subject to section 145 of this Act, subsections (2) and (3) below apply in relation to a grant-maintained school if—
 - (a) it was a voluntary school immediately before it became grant-maintained, or
 - (b) it was established in pursuance of proposals published under section 49 of this Act and either any trust deed relating to the school or the statement required by paragraph 8 of Schedule 3 to this Act makes provision as to the religious education for pupils at the school.
- (2) No person shall be disqualified by reason of his religious opinions, or of his attending or omitting to attend religious worship, for being employed (otherwise than as a teacher) for the purposes of the school.
- (3) No teacher at the school shall receive any less emolument or be deprived of, or disqualified for, any promotion or other advantage—
 - (a) by reason of the fact that he gives religious education, or
 - (b) by reason of his religious opinions or of his attending religious worship.
- (4) Without prejudice to subsections (2) and (3) above, in the case of a school which was a voluntary school immediately before it became grant-maintained, any of the provisions of section 30 of the Education Act 1944 (saving as to position of teachers) which, immediately before the school became grant-maintained, applied in relation to a teacher in the school shall continue to apply in relation to him until he ceases to be employed as a teacher in the school.

145 Changes in religious character of schools

- (1) Where, in the case of a school in relation to which section 143(2) to (4) of this Act for the time being applies, proposals that the required provision for religious education should be provision for religious education in accordance with the tenets of a particular religion or religious denomination are approved under section 98 of this Act—
 - (a) section 144(2) and (3) of this Act shall apply in relation to the school from the time at which the proposals fall to be implemented, and
 - (b) subject to subsection (2) below, section 143(2) to (4) of this Act shall cease to apply in relation to the school from that time.
- (2) Without prejudice to section 144(2) and (3) of this Act, section 143(2) to (4) of this Act shall continue to apply in relation to any teacher who was employed at the school immediately before the proposals referred to in subsection (1) above fell to be implemented until he ceases to be employed as a teacher at the school.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (3) Where, in the case of any grant-maintained school, proposals that the required provision for religious education should be provision for religious education otherwise than in accordance with the tenets of a particular religion or religious denomination are approved under section 98 of this Act—
- (a) section 143(2) to (4) of this Act shall apply in relation to the school from the time at which the proposals fall to be implemented, and
 - (b) section 144(2) and (3) of this Act shall cease to apply in relation to the school from that time.
- (4) In this section, “the required provision for religious education”, in relation to a school, means the provision for religious education for pupils at the school which is required by section 2(1)(a) of the Education Reform Act 1988 to be included in the school’s basic curriculum.

Religious education, worship etc.: general

146 Reconsideration of agreed syllabus: consultation with grant-maintained schools

Where any agreed syllabus for the time being adopted by a local education authority which is in use at a grant-maintained school within the area of the authority (or for any pupils at such a school) falls to be reconsidered under the Fifth Schedule to the Education Act 1944 (procedure for preparing and bringing into operation agreed syllabus for religious instruction), the conference convened under that Schedule to reconsider the syllabus shall consult the governing body of the grant-maintained school before making any recommendation.

147 Standing advisory councils on religious education

- (1) For section 11(3)(b) of the Education Reform Act 1988 (standing advisory councils on religious education) there is substituted—
- “(b) a person appointed by the governing bodies of the grant-maintained schools within the area of the authority to which section 138 or 139 of the Education Act 1993 applies.”
- (2) At the end of section 11 of the Education Reform Act 1988 there is added—
- “(11) The council shall send to the head teacher of any grant-maintained school to which section 138 of the Education Act 1993 applies and which is in the area of the authority a copy of advice which they give to the authority upon matters connected with religious worship.
 - (12) The council shall send a copy of advice which they give to the authority on the religious education to be given in accordance with an agreed syllabus to the head teacher of any grant-maintained school which is in the area of the authority and which—
 - (a) is required, by virtue of section 138 or 140 of the Education Act 1993 (religious education in certain grant-maintained schools), to provide religious education in accordance with an agreed syllabus, or
 - (b) was a controlled school immediately before it became grant-maintained.”

148 Cases where no requirement for Christian collective worship

In section 12 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (determination by advisory councils of the cases in which the requirement for Christian collective worship is not to apply)

- (a) in subsection (1)—
 - (i) for “the head teacher of any county school” there is substituted—
 - “(a) the head teacher of any county school; or
 - (b) the head teacher of any grant-maintained school to which section 138 of the Education Act 1993 applies and which is in the area of the local education authority which constituted the council”, and
 - (ii) after “this Act” there is inserted “or, as the case may be, section 138(2) of the Education Act 1993”,
- (b) in subsection (4) after “section 7” there is inserted “of this Act or, as the case may be, section 138 of the Education Act 1993”,
- (c) in subsection (9) after “county school” there is inserted “or of any grant-maintained school to which subsection (1) above applies”, and
- (d) after subsection (10) there is inserted—

“(11) Where an application is made under subsection (1)(a) above in respect of a school which becomes a grant-maintained school before the application is determined, it shall, unless withdrawn by the head teacher, continue to be considered as if made under subsection (1)(b) above.”

Approved admission number

149 Minimum number for admission

- (1) The governing body of a grant-maintained school shall not fix as the number of pupils in any relevant age group it is intended to admit to the school in any school year a number which is less than the approved admission number for that age group.
- (2) Subject to subsections (3) and (4) below and sections 150 and 151 of this Act, the approved admission number for any relevant age group is the number specified in the proposals published under section 32, 48 or 49 of this Act (as the case may be) as the number of pupils intended to be admitted to the school in that age group in the first school year beginning on or after the date of implementation of the proposals.
- (3) Where proposals for a significant change in the character, or significant enlargement of the premises, of a grant-maintained school or for the transfer of such a school to a new site have been approved or adopted under section 98 of this Act, the approved admission number for any relevant age group for any school year for which the proposals have been wholly or partly implemented is—
 - (a) the number specified in the proposals as the number of pupils proposed to be admitted to the school in that age group in the first school year in relation to which the proposals have been fully implemented, or
 - (b) if for any school year for which the proposals have been partly implemented the Secretary of State directs the substitution of a different number, that number.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (4) The approved admission number in relation to any relevant age group may be varied in the case of any such school with the approval of the Secretary of State.
- (5) For the purposes of this section and sections 150 and 151 of this Act admission to any school for nursery education shall be disregarded.

150 Alteration of minimum number by Secretary of State

- (1) This section applies in relation to any grant-maintained school unless the funding authority have the function under section 151 of this Act in relation to that school.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by order increase the approved admission number for any relevant age group to such number as may be specified in the order for any school year specified in the order beginning after the date of the order.
- (3) No direction may be given under subsection (2) above which would have the effect of requiring such an increase in the number of pupils to be admitted to the school as would—
 - (a) constitute a significant change in the character of the school, or
 - (b) involve any alteration of the premises of the school.

151 Alteration of minimum number by funding authority

- (1) If an order under section 12(1) of this Act applies to the area of a local education authority, the funding authority may give a direction under subsection (2) below to the governing body of a grant-maintained school in the area.
- (2) A direction under this subsection—
 - (a) may increase the approved admission number for any relevant age group to such number as may be specified in the direction for any school year specified in the direction beginning after the date of the direction, and
 - (b) if any alteration would be required to the premises of the school in consequence of any increase in any approved admission number made by the direction, shall give particulars of the alteration.
- (3) No direction may be given under subsection (2) above which would have the effect of requiring such an increase in the number of pupils to be admitted to the school as would constitute a significant change in the character of the school or involve a significant enlargement of the premises of the school.
- (4) Before deciding to give a direction under subsection (2) above the funding authority shall consult the governing body about the proposed content of the direction.
- (5) Before giving a direction under subsection (2) above the funding authority shall serve a draft of the proposed direction on the governing body.
- (6) A governing body on which a draft is served under subsection (5) above may, within the period of fifteen days beginning with the day on which it was served, refer the matter to the Secretary of State and, if they do so, shall inform the funding authority.
- (7) On a reference under subsection (6) above the Secretary of State may—
 - (a) require the funding authority not to give any direction in terms of the draft, or
 - (b) authorise the funding authority to give a direction in such terms, or those terms as required to be modified by the Secretary of State,

and any direction given by the funding authority shall be in the terms authorised under paragraph (b) above.

- (8) Where the funding authority give a direction under this section—
- (a) if any particulars are specified in pursuance of subsection (2)(b) above, the governing body shall secure the alteration of the school premises in accordance with the particulars, and
 - (b) the funding authority shall make a grant to them of an amount equal to the reasonable expenses incurred or to be incurred in doing so.

Supplementary

152 Manner of giving notification to governing body

Any notification to the governing body of a school for the purposes of any provision of this Part of this Act may be given, and withdrawn, in such manner as the governing body may require.

153 Provision of information by governing body

- (1) The governing body of a grant-maintained school shall publish, at such times and in such manner as may be required by regulations made by the Secretary of State, such information in respect of the school as may be so required.
- (2) The governing body shall make such reports and returns, and give such information, to the Secretary of State as he may require for the purpose of his functions in relation to education.
- (3) The governing body shall make such reports and returns, and give such information, to the funding authority as they may require for the purpose of the exercise of their functions.
- (4) The governing body shall make such reports and returns, and give such information, to any local education authority by whom any functions are exercisable—
 - (a) in relation to the school, or
 - (b) in relation to registered pupils at the school,as the authority may require for the purpose of the exercise of those functions.
- (5) The governing body shall make such reports and returns, and give such information, in relation to registered pupils at the school aged five or under as any local education authority may require for the purpose of exercising their functions under section 19(1) (a) of the Children Act 1989 (review of provision for day care).

154 Inspection of accounts and reports to Parliament

- (1) The accounts of the governing body of any grant-maintained school shall be open to the inspection of the Comptroller and Auditor General.
- (2) The Comptroller and Auditor General shall, in each session of Parliament, report to the House of Commons—
 - (a) whether he has carried out under section 6 of the National Audit Act 1983 any examinations in respect of grant-maintained schools, and if he has,

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) the results of such examinations.
- (3) The first report under subsection (2) above shall cover a period beginning with the commencement of this section and each subsequent report shall cover a period beginning at the end of the period covered by the preceding report.
- (4) In determining whether to carry out any examination under that section in respect of grant-maintained schools and, if he determines to do so, the nature of the examination, the Comptroller and Auditor General shall have regard to any relevant published report of any study promoted or undertaken by the Audit Commission for Local Authorities and the National Health Service in England and Wales under section 220 of the Education Reform Act 1988.

Interpretation

155 Interpretation of Part II

- (1) In this Part of this Act—
 - “premises” includes any interest in or easement, right or charge in, to or over premises,
 - “reception class” means a class in which education is provided which is suitable to the requirements of pupils aged five and any pupils under or over that age whom it is expedient to educate together with pupils of that age, and
 - “registered”, in relation to parents or pupils, or their names or addresses, means shown in the register kept under section 80 of the Education Act 1944.
- (2) The following provisions apply for the purposes of this Part of this Act.
- (3) References to the character of a school are to the kind of school it is determined by any matter relating to—
 - (a) the provision of education at the school, or
 - (b) the arrangements for admission of pupils to the school,
 the alteration of which would amount to a change in the character of the school.
- (4) References to a relevant age group are to an age group in which pupils are or will normally be admitted to the school in question.
- (5) Children are to be regarded as admitted to a school for nursery education if they are or are to be placed on admission in a nursery class.
- (6) The transfer to a reception class of pupils who have been admitted to a school for nursery education shall be treated as admission to the school.
- (7) References, in relation to proposals under this Part of this Act, to the date of publication of the proposals are—
 - (a) to the date on which the requirements of this Part of this Act, or of regulations made by virtue of this Part of this Act, with respect to the publication of the proposals (or of any notice relating to the proposals) are satisfied, or
 - (b) where different requirements are satisfied on different dates, to the last of those dates,
 and references to the time at which such proposals are published shall be construed accordingly.

- (8) References in section 38 of this Act to liabilities incurred by a local authority shall not be read as including liabilities of such an authority to make payments to or in respect of any person in pursuance of any duty imposed on the authority under any statutory provision.
- (9) A person employed by a local education authority is to be regarded as employed to work at a school if his employment with the authority for the time being involves work at that school.
- (10) Subject to section 39(2) of this Act, a person employed by such an authority is to be regarded as employed to work solely at a school if his only employment with the authority (disregarding any employment under a separate contract with the authority) is for the time being at that school.
- (11) Nothing in this Part of this Act or in any order made under it relating to the trusts subject to which any land or other property or rights transferred under this Part are to be held by the transferee shall be taken as prejudicing any modification of those trusts after that transfer under any provision of this Part or otherwise.

PART III

CHILDREN WITH SPECIAL EDUCATIONAL NEEDS

Introductory

156 Meaning of “special educational needs” and “special educational provision” etc

- (1) For the purposes of the Education Acts, a child has “special educational needs” if he has a learning difficulty which calls for special educational provision to be made for him.
- (2) For the purposes of this Act, subject to subsection (3) below, a child has a “learning difficulty” if—
 - (a) he has a significantly greater difficulty in learning than the majority of children of his age,
 - (b) he has a disability which either prevents or hinders him from making use of educational facilities of a kind generally provided for children of his age in schools within the area of the local education authority, or
 - (c) he is under the age of five years and is, or would be if special educational provision were not made for him, likely to fall within paragraph (a) or (b) when over that age.
- (3) A child is not to be taken as having a learning difficulty solely because the language (or form of the language) in which he is, or will be, taught is different from a language (or form of a language) which has at any time been spoken in his home.
- (4) In the Education Acts, “special educational provision” means—
 - (a) in relation to a child who has attained the age of two years, educational provision which is additional to, or otherwise different from, the educational provision made generally for children of his age in schools maintained by the local education authority (other than special schools) or grant-maintained schools in their area, and

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

(b) in relation to a child under that age, educational provision of any kind.

(5) In this Part of this Act, “child” includes any person who has not attained the age of nineteen years and is a registered pupil at a school.

Code of practice

157 Code of Practice

(1) The Secretary of State shall issue, and may from time to time revise, a code of practice giving practical guidance in respect of the discharge by local education authorities and the governing bodies of maintained or grant-maintained schools, or grant-maintained special schools, of their functions under this Part of this Act.

(2) It shall be the duty of—

- (a) local education authorities, and such governing bodies, exercising functions under this Part of this Act, and
- (b) any other person exercising any function for the purpose of the discharge by local education authorities, and such governing bodies, of functions under this Part of this Act,

to have regard to the provisions of the code.

(3) On any appeal, the Tribunal shall have regard to any provision of the code which appears to the Tribunal to be relevant to any question arising on the appeal.

(4) The Secretary of State shall publish the code as for the time being in force.

158 Making and approval of code

(1) Where the Secretary of State proposes to issue or revise a code of practice, he shall prepare a draft of the code (or revised code).

(2) The Secretary of State shall consult such persons about the draft as he thinks fit and shall consider any representations made by them.

(3) If he determines to proceed with the draft (either in its original form or with such modifications as he thinks fit) he shall lay it before both Houses of Parliament.

(4) If the draft is approved by resolution of each House, the Secretary of State shall issue the code in the form of the draft and the code shall come into effect on such day as the Secretary of State may by order appoint.

Special educational provision: general

159 Review of arrangements

A local education authority shall keep under review the arrangements made by them for special educational provision and, in doing so, shall, to the extent that it appears necessary or desirable for the purpose of co-ordinating provision for children with special educational needs, consult the funding authority and the governing bodies of county, voluntary, maintained special and grant-maintained schools in their area.

160 Qualified duty to secure education of children with special educational needs in ordinary schools

- (1) Any person exercising any functions under this Part of this Act in respect of a child with special educational needs who should be educated in a school shall secure that, if the conditions mentioned in subsection (2) below are satisfied, the child is educated in a school which is not a special school unless that is incompatible with the wishes of his parent.
- (2) The conditions are that educating the child in a school which is not a special school is compatible with—
 - (a) his receiving the special educational provision which his learning difficulty calls for,
 - (b) the provision of efficient education for the children with whom he will be educated, and
 - (c) the efficient use of resources.

161 Duties of governing body etc. in relation to pupils with special educational needs

- (1) The governing body, in the case of a county, voluntary or grant-maintained school, and the local education authority, in the case of a maintained nursery school, shall—
 - (a) use their best endeavours, in exercising their functions in relation to the school, to secure that if any registered pupil has special educational needs the special educational provision which his learning difficulty calls for is made,
 - (b) secure that, where the responsible person has been informed by the local education authority that a registered pupil has special educational needs, those needs are made known to all who are likely to teach him, and
 - (c) secure that the teachers in the school are aware of the importance of identifying, and providing for, those registered pupils who have special educational needs.
- (2) In subsection (1)(b) above, “the responsible person” means—
 - (a) in the case of a county, voluntary or grant-maintained school, the head teacher or the appropriate governor (that is, the chairman of the governing body or, where the governing body have designated another governor for the purposes of this paragraph, that other governor), and
 - (b) in the case of a nursery school, the head teacher.
- (3) To the extent that it appears necessary or desirable for the purpose of co-ordinating provision for children with special educational needs—
 - (a) the governing bodies of county, voluntary and grant-maintained schools shall, in exercising functions relating to the provision for such children, consult the local education authority, the funding authority and the governing bodies of other such schools, and
 - (b) in relation to maintained nursery schools, the local education authority shall, in exercising those functions, consult the funding authority and the governing bodies of county, voluntary and grant-maintained schools.
- (4) Where a child who has special educational needs is being educated in a county, voluntary or grant-maintained school or a maintained nursery school, those concerned with making special educational provision for the child shall secure, so far as is reasonably practicable and is compatible with—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) the child receiving the special educational provision which his learning difficulty calls for,
- (b) the provision of efficient education for the children with whom he will be educated, and
- (c) the efficient use of resources,

that the child engages in the activities of the school together with children who do not have special educational needs.

- (5) The annual report for each county, voluntary, maintained special or grant-maintained school shall include a report containing such information as may be prescribed about the implementation of the governing body's policy for pupils with special educational needs; and in this subsection "annual report" means the report prepared under the articles of government for the school in accordance with section 30 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 or, as the case may be, paragraph 8 of Schedule 6 to this Act.

162 Provision of goods and services in connection with special educational needs

- (1) A local education authority may for the purpose only of assisting—
 - (a) the governing bodies of county, voluntary or grant-maintained schools in their or any other area in the performance of the governing bodies' duties under section 161(1)(a) of this Act, or
 - (b) the governing bodies of maintained or grant-maintained special schools in their or any other area in the performance of the governing bodies' duties,
 supply goods or services to them.
- (2) The terms on which goods or services are supplied by local education authorities to the governing bodies of grant-maintained schools or grant-maintained special schools, or to the governing bodies of county, voluntary or maintained special schools in any other area, under this section may, in such circumstances as may be prescribed, include such terms as to payment as may be prescribed.
- (3) This section is without prejudice to the generality of any other power of local education authorities to supply goods or services.

163 Special educational provision otherwise than in schools

- (1) Where a local education authority are satisfied that it would be inappropriate for the special educational provision (or any part of the special educational provision) which a learning difficulty of a child in their area calls for to be made in a school, they may arrange for the provision (or, as the case may be, for that part of it) to be made otherwise than in a school.
- (2) Before making an arrangement under this section, a local education authority shall consult the child's parent.

164 Provision outside England and Wales for certain children

- (1) A local education authority may make such arrangements as they think fit to enable a child for whom they maintain a statement under section 168 of this Act to attend an institution outside England and Wales which specialises in providing for children with special needs.

- (2) In subsection (1) above, “children with special needs” means children who have particular needs which would be special educational needs if those children were in England and Wales.
- (3) Where a local education authority make arrangements under this section in respect of a child, those arrangements may in particular include contributing to or paying—
 - (a) fees charged by the institution,
 - (b) expenses reasonably incurred in maintaining him while he is at the institution or travelling to or from it,
 - (c) his travelling expenses, and
 - (d) expenses reasonably incurred by any person accompanying him while he is travelling or staying at the institution.
- (4) This section is without prejudice to any other powers of a local education authority.

Identification and assessment of children with special educational needs

165 General duty of local education authority towards children for whom they are responsible

- (1) A local education authority shall exercise their powers with a view to securing that, of the children for whom they are responsible, they identify those to whom subsection (2) below applies.
- (2) This subsection applies to a child if—
 - (a) he has special educational needs, and
 - (b) it is necessary for the authority to determine the special educational provision which any learning difficulty he may have calls for.
- (3) For the purposes of this Part of this Act, a local education authority are responsible for a child if he is in their area and—
 - (a) he is a registered pupil at a maintained, grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school,
 - (b) education is provided for him at a school which is not a maintained, grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school at the expense of the authority or the funding authority,
 - (c) he does not come within paragraph (a) or (b) above but is a registered pupil at a school and has been brought to the authority’s attention as having (or probably having) special educational needs, or
 - (d) he is not a registered pupil at a school, is not under the age of two years or over compulsory school age and has been brought to their attention as having (or probably having) special educational needs.

166 Duty of District Health Authority or local authority to help local education authority

- (1) Where it appears to a local education authority that any District Health Authority or local authority could, by taking any specified action, help in the exercise of any of their functions under this Part of this Act, they may request the help of the authority, specifying the action in question.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (2) An authority whose help is so requested shall comply with the request unless—
 - (a) they consider that the help requested is not necessary for the purpose of the exercise by the local education authority of those functions, or
 - (b) subsection (3) below applies.
- (3) This subsection applies—
 - (a) in the case of a District Health Authority, if that authority consider that, having regard to the resources available to them for the purpose of the exercise of their functions under the National Health Service Act 1977, it is not reasonable for them to comply with the request, or
 - (b) in the case of a local authority, if that authority consider that the request is not compatible with their own statutory or other duties and obligations or unduly prejudices the discharge of any of their functions.
- (4) Regulations may provide that, where an authority are under a duty by virtue of subsection (2) above to comply with a request to help a local education authority in the making of an assessment under section 167 of this Act or a statement under section 168 of this Act, they must, subject to prescribed exceptions, comply with the request within the prescribed period.
- (5) In this section, “local authority” means a county council, a metropolitan district council, a London borough council or the Common Council of the City of London.

167 Assessment of educational needs

- (1) Where a local education authority are of the opinion that a child for whom they are responsible falls, or probably falls, within subsection (2) below, they shall serve a notice on the child’s parent informing him—
 - (a) that they propose to make an assessment of the child’s educational needs,
 - (b) of the procedure to be followed in making the assessment,
 - (c) of the name of the officer of the authority from whom further information may be obtained, and
 - (d) of the parent’s right to make representations, and submit written evidence, to the authority within such period (which shall not be less than twenty-nine days beginning with the date on which the notice is served) as may be specified in the notice.
- (2) A child falls within this subsection if—
 - (a) he has special educational needs, and
 - (b) it is necessary for the authority to determine the special educational provision which any learning difficulty he may have calls for.
- (3) Where—
 - (a) a local education authority have served a notice under subsection (1) above and the period specified in the notice in accordance with subsection (1)(d) above has expired, and
 - (b) the authority remain of the opinion, after taking into account any representations made and any evidence submitted to them in response to the notice, that the child falls, or probably falls, within subsection (2) above,
 they shall make an assessment of his educational needs.

- (4) Where a local education authority decide to make an assessment under this section, they shall give notice in writing to the child's parent of that decision and of their reasons for making it.
- (5) Schedule 9 to this Act (which makes provision in relation to the making of assessments under this section) shall have effect.
- (6) Where, at any time after serving a notice under subsection (1) above, a local education authority decide not to assess the educational needs of the child concerned they shall give notice in writing to the child's parent of their decision.

168 Statement of special educational needs

- (1) If, in the light of an assessment under section 167 of this Act of any child's educational needs and of any representations made by the child's parent in pursuance of Schedule 10 to this Act, it is necessary for the local education authority to determine the special educational provision which any learning difficulty he may have calls for, the authority shall make and maintain a statement of his special educational needs.
- (2) The statement shall be in such form and contain such information as may be prescribed.
- (3) In particular, the statement shall—
 - (a) give details of the authority's assessment of the child's special educational needs, and
 - (b) specify the special educational provision to be made for the purpose of meeting those needs, including the particulars required by subsection (4) below.
- (4) The statement shall—
 - (a) specify the type of school or other institution which the local education authority consider would be appropriate for the child,
 - (b) if they are not required under Schedule 10 to this Act to specify the name of any school in the statement, specify the name of any school or institution (whether in the United Kingdom or elsewhere) which they consider would be appropriate for the child and should be specified in the statement, and
 - (c) specify any provision for the child for which they make arrangements under section 163 of this Act and which they consider should be specified in the statement.
- (5) Where a local education authority maintain a statement under this section—
 - (a) unless the child's parent has made suitable arrangements, the authority—
 - (i) shall arrange that the special educational provision specified in the statement is made for the child, and
 - (ii) may arrange that any non-educational provision specified in the statement is made for him in such manner as they consider appropriate, and
 - (b) if the name of a maintained, grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school is specified in the statement, the governing body of the school shall admit the child to the school.
- (6) Subsection (5)(b) above does not affect any power to exclude from a school a pupil who is already a registered pupil there.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (7) Schedule 10 to this Act (which makes provision in relation to the making and maintenance of statements under this section) shall have effect.

169 Appeal against decision not to make statement

- (1) If, after making an assessment under section 167 of this Act of the educational needs of any child for whom no statement is maintained under section 168 of this Act, the local education authority do not propose to make such a statement, they shall give notice in writing of their decision, and of the effect of subsection (2) below, to the child's parent.
- (2) In such a case, the child's parent may appeal to the Tribunal against the decision.
- (3) On an appeal under this section, the Tribunal may—
 - (a) dismiss the appeal,
 - (b) order the local education authority to make and maintain such a statement, or
 - (c) remit the case to the authority for them to reconsider whether, having regard to any observations made by the Tribunal, it is necessary for the authority to determine the special educational provision which any learning difficulty the child may have calls for.

170 Appeal against contents of statement

- (1) The parent of a child for whom a local education authority maintain a statement under section 168 of this Act may—
 - (a) when the statement is first made,
 - (b) where the description in the statement of the authority's assessment of the child's special educational needs, or the special educational provision specified in the statement, is amended, or
 - (c) where, after conducting an assessment of the educational needs of the child under section 167 of this Act, the local education authority determine not to amend the statement,appeal to the Tribunal against the description in the statement of the authority's assessment of the child's special educational needs, the special educational provision specified in the statement or, if no school is named in the statement, that fact.
- (2) Subsection (1)(b) above does not apply where the amendment is made in pursuance of paragraph 8 or 11(3)(b) of Schedule 10 to this Act or directions under section 197 of this Act; and subsection (1)(c) above does not apply to a determination made following the service of notice under paragraph 10 of Schedule 10 to this Act of a proposal to amend the statement.
- (3) On an appeal under this section, the Tribunal may—
 - (a) dismiss the appeal,
 - (b) order the authority to amend the statement, so far as it describes the authority's assessment of the child's special educational needs or specifies the special educational provision, and make such other consequential amendments to the statement as the Tribunal think fit, or
 - (c) order the authority to cease to maintain the statement.
- (4) On an appeal under this section the Tribunal shall not order the local education authority to specify the name of any school in the statement (either in substitution for an existing name or in a case where no school is named) unless—

- (a) the parent has expressed a preference for the school in pursuance of arrangements under paragraph 3 of Schedule 10 to this Act, or
 - (b) in the proceedings the parent, the local education authority or both have proposed the school.
- (5) Before determining any appeal under this section the Tribunal may, with the agreement of the parties, correct any deficiency in the statement.

171 Access for local education authority to certain schools

- (1) This section applies where—
 - (a) a local education authority maintain a statement for a child under section 168 of this Act, and
 - (b) in pursuance of the statement education is provided for the child at—
 - (i) a school maintained by another local education authority,
 - (ii) a grant-maintained school, or
 - (iii) a grant-maintained special school.
- (2) Any person authorised by the local education authority shall be entitled to have access at any reasonable time to the premises of any such school for the purpose of monitoring the special educational provision made in pursuance of the statement for the child at the school.

172 Reviews of educational needs

- (1) Regulations may prescribe the frequency with which assessments under section 167 of this Act are to be repeated in respect of children for whom statements are maintained under section 168 of this Act.
- (2) Where—
 - (a) the parent of a child for whom a statement is maintained under section 168 of this Act asks the local education authority to arrange for an assessment to be made in respect of the child under section 167 of this Act,
 - (b) such an assessment has not been made within the period of six months ending with the date on which the request is made, and
 - (c) it is necessary for the authority to make a further assessment under that section, the authority shall comply with the request.
- (3) If in any case where subsection (2)(a) and (b) above applies the authority determine not to comply with the request—
 - (a) they shall give notice of that fact and of the effect of paragraph (b) below to the child's parent, and
 - (b) the parent may appeal to the Tribunal against the determination.
- (4) On an appeal under subsection (3) above the Tribunal may—
 - (a) dismiss the appeal, or
 - (b) order the authority to arrange for an assessment to be made in respect of the child under section 167 of this Act.
- (5) A statement under section 168 of this Act shall be reviewed by the local education authority—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) on the making of an assessment in respect of the child concerned under section 167 of this Act, and
 - (b) in any event, within the period of twelve months beginning with the making of the statement or, as the case may be, with the previous review.
- (6) Regulations may make provision—
- (a) as to the manner in which reviews of such statements are to be conducted,
 - (b) as to the participation in such reviews of such persons as may be prescribed, and
 - (c) in connection with such other matters relating to such reviews as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.

173 Assessment of educational needs at request of child's parent

- (1) Where—
- (a) the parent of a child for whom a local education authority are responsible but for whom no statement is maintained under section 168 of this Act asks the authority to arrange for an assessment to be made in respect of the child under section 167 of this Act,
 - (b) such an assessment has not been made within the period of six months ending with the date on which the request is made, and
 - (c) it is necessary for the authority to make an assessment under that section,
- the authority shall comply with the request.
- (2) If in any case where subsection (1)(a) and (b) above applies the authority determine not to comply with the request—
- (a) they shall give notice of that fact and of the effect of paragraph (b) below to the child's parent, and
 - (b) the parent may appeal to the Tribunal against the determination.
- (3) On an appeal under subsection (2) above the Tribunal may—
- (a) dismiss the appeal, or
 - (b) order the authority to arrange for an assessment to be made in respect of the child under section 167 of this Act.

174 Assessment of educational needs at request of governing body of grant-maintained school

- (1) Where in the case of a child for whom a local education authority are responsible but for whom no statement is maintained under section 168 of this Act—
- (a) a grant-maintained school is specified in a direction in respect of the child under section 13 of this Act,
 - (b) the governing body of the school ask the authority to arrange for an assessment to be made in respect of the child under section 167 of this Act, and
 - (c) such an assessment has not been made within the period of six months ending with the date on which the request is made,
- the local education authority shall serve a notice under subsection (2) below on the child's parent.
- (2) The notice shall inform the child's parent—

- (a) that the local education authority propose to make an assessment of the child's educational needs,
 - (b) of the procedure to be followed in making the assessment,
 - (c) of the name of the officer of the authority from whom further information may be obtained, and
 - (d) of the parent's right to make representations, and submit written evidence, to the authority within such period (which shall not be less than twenty-nine days beginning with the date on which the notice is served) as may be specified in the notice.
- (3) Where—
 - (a) a local education authority have served a notice under subsection (2) above and the period specified in the notice in accordance with subsection (2)(d) above has expired, and
 - (b) the authority are of the opinion, after taking into account any representations made and any evidence submitted to them in response to the notice, that the child falls, or probably falls, within subsection (4) below,they shall make an assessment of his educational needs under section 167 of this Act.
- (4) A child falls within this subsection if—
 - (a) he has special educational needs, and
 - (b) it is necessary to determine the special educational provision which any learning difficulty he may have calls for.
- (5) Where a local education authority decide in pursuance of this section to make an assessment under that section, they shall give notice in writing to the child's parent, and to the governing body of the grant-maintained school, of that decision and of their reasons for making it.
- (6) Where, at any time after serving a notice under subsection (2) above, a local education authority decide not to assess the educational needs of the child concerned, they shall give notice in writing to the child's parent and to the governing body of the grant-maintained school of their decision.

175 Assessment of educational needs of children under two

- (1) Where a local education authority are of the opinion that a child in their area who is under the age of two years falls, or probably falls, within subsection (2) below—
 - (a) they may, with the consent of his parent, make an assessment of the child's educational needs, and
 - (b) they shall make such an assessment at the request of his parent.
- (2) A child falls within this subsection if—
 - (a) he has special educational needs, and
 - (b) it is necessary for the authority to determine the special educational provision which any learning difficulty he may have calls for.
- (3) An assessment under this section shall be made in such manner as the authority consider appropriate.
- (4) After making an assessment under this section, the authority—
 - (a) may make a statement of the child's special educational needs, and

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) may maintain that statement,
in such manner as they consider appropriate.

176 Duty of District Health Authority or National Health Service trust to notify parent etc

- (1) This section applies where a District Health Authority or a National Health Service trust, in the course of exercising any of their functions in relation to a child who is under the age of five years, form the opinion that he has (or probably has) special educational needs.
- (2) The health authority or trust shall—
 - (a) inform the child’s parent of their opinion and of their duty under this section, and
 - (b) after giving the parent an opportunity to discuss that opinion with an officer of the health authority or trust, bring it to the attention of the appropriate local education authority.
- (3) If the health authority or trust are of the opinion that a particular voluntary organisation is likely to be able to give the parent advice or assistance in connection with any special educational needs that the child may have, they shall inform the parent accordingly.

Special Educational Needs Tribunal

177 Constitution of Tribunal

- (1) There shall be established a tribunal, to be known as the Special Educational Needs Tribunal (referred to in this Part of this Act as “the Tribunal”), to exercise the jurisdiction conferred on it by this Part of this Act.
- (2) There shall be appointed—
 - (a) a President of the Tribunal (referred to in this Part of this Act as “the President”),
 - (b) a panel of persons (referred to in this Part of this Act as “the chairmen’s panel”) who may serve as chairman of the Tribunal, and
 - (c) a panel of persons (referred to in this Part of this Act as “the lay panel”) who may serve as the other two members of the Tribunal apart from the chairman.
- (3) The President and the members of the chairmen’s panel shall each be appointed by the Lord Chancellor.
- (4) The members of the lay panel shall each be appointed by the Secretary of State.
- (5) Regulations may—
 - (a) provide for the jurisdiction of the Tribunal to be exercised by such number of tribunals as may be determined from time to time by the President, and
 - (b) make such other provision in connection with the establishment and continuation of the Tribunal as the Secretary of State considers necessary or desirable.
- (6) The Secretary of State may, with the consent of the Treasury, provide such staff and accommodation as the Tribunal may require.

178 The President and members of the panels

- (1) No person may be appointed President or member of the chairmen's panel unless he has a seven year general qualification (within the meaning of section 71 of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990).
- (2) No person may be appointed member of the lay panel unless he satisfies such requirements as may be prescribed.
- (3) If, in the opinion of the Lord Chancellor, the President is unfit to continue in office or is incapable of performing his duties, the Lord Chancellor may revoke his appointment.
- (4) Each member of the chairmen's panel or lay panel shall hold and vacate office under the terms of the instrument under which he is appointed.
- (5) The President or a member of the chairmen's panel or lay panel—
 - (a) may resign office by notice in writing to the Lord Chancellor or (as the case may be) the Secretary of State, and
 - (b) is eligible for re-appointment if he ceases to hold office.

179 Remuneration and expenses

- (1) The Secretary of State may pay to the President, and to any other person in respect of his service as a member of the Tribunal, such remuneration and allowances as he may, with the consent of the Treasury, determine.
- (2) The Secretary of State may defray the expenses of the Tribunal to such amount as he may, with the consent of the Treasury, determine.

180 Tribunal procedure

- (1) Regulations may make provision about the proceedings of the Tribunal on an appeal under this Part of this Act and the initiation of such an appeal.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular, include provision—
 - (a) as to the period within which, and the manner in which, appeals are to be instituted,
 - (b) where the jurisdiction of the Tribunal is being exercised by more than one tribunal—
 - (i) for determining by which tribunal any appeal is to be heard, and
 - (ii) for the transfer of proceedings from one tribunal to another,
 - (c) for enabling any functions which relate to matters preliminary or incidental to an appeal to be performed by the President, or by the chairman,
 - (d) for the holding of hearings in private in prescribed circumstances,
 - (e) for hearings to be conducted in the absence of any member, other than the chairman,
 - (f) as to the persons who may appear on behalf of the parties,
 - (g) for granting any person such discovery or inspection of documents or right to further particulars as might be granted by a county court,
 - (h) requiring persons to attend to give evidence and produce documents,
 - (i) for authorising the administration of oaths to witnesses,

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (j) for the determination of appeals without a hearing in prescribed circumstances,
 - (k) as to the withdrawal of appeals,
 - (l) for the award of costs or expenses,
 - (m) for taxing or otherwise settling any such costs or expenses (and, in particular, for enabling such costs to be taxed in the county court),
 - (n) for the registration and proof of decisions and orders, and
 - (o) for enabling the Tribunal to review its decisions, or revoke or vary its orders, in such circumstances as may be determined in accordance with the regulations.
- (3) The Secretary of State may pay such allowances for the purpose of or in connection with the attendance of persons at the Tribunal as he may with the consent of the Treasury determine.
- (4) The Arbitration Act 1950 shall not apply to any proceedings before the Tribunal but regulations may make provision corresponding to any provision of that Act.
- (5) Any person who without reasonable excuse fails to comply with—
- (a) any requirement in respect of the discovery or inspection of documents imposed by the regulations by virtue of subsection (2)(g) above, or
 - (b) any requirement imposed by the regulations by virtue of subsection (2)(h) above,
- is guilty of an offence.
- (6) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (5) above is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

181 Supervision of and appeals from Tribunal

- (1) In paragraph 15 of Part I of Schedule 1 to the Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1992 (tribunals under direct supervision of Council on Tribunals), after sub-paragraph (d) there is inserted—
- “(e) the Special Educational Needs Tribunal constituted under section 177 of the Education Act 1993”.
- (2) In section 11(1) of that Act (appeals from certain tribunals), for “15(a) or (d)” there is substituted “15(a), (d) or (e)”.

Special schools and independent schools

182 Special schools

- (1) A school which is specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with special educational needs and is for the time being approved by the Secretary of State under section 188 of this Act shall be known as a special school.
- (2) A special school maintained by a local education authority shall be known as a maintained special school.
- (3) A special school conducted by a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for the purpose—
- (a) made by the funding authority under section 183 of this Act, or

(b) made under section 186 of this Act,
shall be known as a grant-maintained special school.

(4) Schedule 11 to this Act (which provides for the government and conduct of grant-maintained special schools) shall have effect.

183 Establishment, etc. of maintained or grant-maintained special schools

(1) The funding authority may establish in the area of any local education authority a school which is specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with special educational needs if—

- (a) an order under section 12(1) of this Act applies to the area, and
- (b) the school is intended to provide relevant education for pupils in the area, whether or not it also provides other education or education for pupils from outside the area.

(2) Where a local education authority intend—

- (a) to establish a school which is specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with special educational needs,
- (b) to make any prescribed alteration to a maintained special school, or
- (c) to discontinue such a school,

they shall serve under subsection (6) below notice of their proposals.

(3) Where the funding authority—

- (a) intend to establish a school which is specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with special educational needs,
- (b) are of the opinion that any prescribed alteration should be made to a grant-maintained special school, or
- (c) are of the opinion that such a school should be discontinued,

and an order under section 12(1) of this Act applies to the area concerned, they shall serve under subsection (6) below notice of their proposals.

(4) Where the governing body of a grant-maintained special school intend—

- (a) to make any prescribed alteration to the school, or
- (b) to discontinue the school,

they shall serve under subsection (6) below notice of their proposals.

(5) Except in pursuance of proposals under this section approved under section 184 of this Act—

- (a) a local education authority or the funding authority may not establish a school which is specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with special educational needs,
- (b) no prescribed alteration may be made to a maintained or grant-maintained special school, and
- (c) a maintained or grant-maintained special school may not be discontinued.

(6) Notice for the purposes of subsections (2) to (4) above shall be served on—

- (a) the Secretary of State, and
- (b) such other persons as may be prescribed,

and shall give such information as may be prescribed.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (7) If the proposals are approved under section 184 of this Act, the body which served the notice or, in the case of proposals under subsection (3)(b) or (c) above, the governing body of the school shall implement them.
- (8) If proposals under subsection (3)(a) above are so approved, a governing body of the school shall be incorporated on such date as may be specified in the proposals (referred to in this Part of this Act as the “incorporation date”).
- (9) In relation to the establishment of a school in pursuance of proposals under subsection (3)(a) above, regulations may apply any provision of Chapter IV or V of Part II of this Act with or without modification.
- (10) In this Part of this Act—
 - (a) references to the discontinuance of a maintained special school are to the local education authority ceasing to maintain it, and
 - (b) references to an alteration to a school include the transfer of the school to a new site.

184 Procedure for dealing with proposals

- (1) Before a body serve notice of any proposals under section 183 of this Act they shall consult such persons as appear to them to be appropriate; and in discharging their duty under this subsection, the body shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (2) Any person may, within such period (which shall not be less than two months beginning with the date on which the notice is served) as may be specified in the notice under that section, submit objections to the proposals to the body which served the notice.
- (3) Within one month after the end of the period for making objections specified in the last notice to be served under that section, the body which served the notice shall transmit to the Secretary of State copies of all objections which have been duly made (and not withdrawn in writing), together with their observations on them.
- (4) The Secretary of State may, after considering the proposals, any objections to the proposals and any observations on the objections, reject the proposals, approve them without modification or, after consulting the body which served notice of them and, in the case of proposals under section 183(3)(b) or (c) of this Act, the governing body, approve them with such modifications as he thinks desirable.
- (5) The Secretary of State may modify any proposals required under section 183 of this Act to be implemented—
 - (a) in the case of proposals under section 183(3)(b) or (c) of this Act—
 - (i) at the request of the governing body, or
 - (ii) at the request of the funding authority and after consulting the governing body, or
 - (b) in any other case, at the request of the body which served notice of the proposals.
- (6) References in this Part of this Act to proposals under section 183 of this Act, in any case where the Secretary of State has modified such proposals in pursuance of this section, are to the proposals as so modified.

- (7) Service of a notice under that section which is sent by post in accordance with section 113 of the Education Act 1944 (notices) shall be taken to have been effected on the second day after the day on which the notice is posted.

185 Approval of premises of maintained or grant-maintained special schools

- (1) Where a body serve under section 183(6) of this Act notice of proposals for the establishment of a school which is specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with special educational needs, they shall submit to the Secretary of State the particulars in respect of the proposed premises of the school mentioned in subsection (3) below.
- (2) Where a body serve under section 183(6) of this Act notice of proposals for making a prescribed alteration to a special school, they shall if the Secretary of State so directs submit to him the particulars in respect of the premises or proposed premises of the school mentioned in subsection (3) below.
- (3) The particulars are—
- (a) particulars of the provision made or to be made in respect of the means of access to and within the premises or proposed premises of the school, and
 - (b) such other particulars in respect of the premises or proposed premises of the school as the Secretary of State may require,
- and they shall be submitted at such time and in such form and manner as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (4) The particulars submitted under subsection (3)(a) above shall indicate the extent to which the provision referred to conforms with the minimum requirements, so far as they are relevant to school premises, of—
- (a) Design Note 18 “Access for Disabled People to Educational Buildings” published in 1984 on behalf of the Secretary of State, or
 - (b) if that Note has been replaced by a document prescribed by regulations made or having effect as if made under the Town and Country Planning Act 1990, that document.
- (5) Particulars submitted under this section in respect of the premises or proposed premises of the school require the approval of the Secretary of State.
- (6) Where any proposals falling within subsection (1) or (2) above are required to be implemented, they shall be implemented in accordance with any particulars approved under this section.

186 Maintained special school becoming grant-maintained special school

- (1) Regulations may make provision for maintained special schools, or any class or description of such schools, to cease to be maintained by the local education authority and become grant-maintained special schools.
- (2) Regulations shall require, before a maintained special school becomes a grant-maintained special school in pursuance of the regulations—
- (a) the submission to the Secretary of State of proposals for the purpose by the governing body of the school, and
 - (b) the approval of such proposals, as originally submitted or as modified by the Secretary of State (whether before or after they are approved).

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (3) If the proposals are so approved, a governing body of the school shall be incorporated in accordance with Schedule 11 to this Act on the date of approval (referred to in this Part of this Act as the “incorporation date”).
- (4) Regulations made for the purposes of this section may apply any provision of—
 - (a) Chapter II, III or V of Part II of this Act,
 - (b) section 184 of this Act, or
 - (c) section 273 of this Act,
 with or without modification.

187 Groups including grant-maintained special schools

- (1) Regulations may modify the provisions of Chapter IX of Part II of this Act for the purpose of securing that—
 - (a) two or more grant-maintained special schools, or one or more grant-maintained special schools together with one or more grant-maintained schools, may be conducted as a group by a single governing body,
 - (b) a special school maintained by a local education authority may cease to be so maintained and may be conducted by a governing body incorporated under that Chapter, and
 - (c) a grant-maintained special school may become a member of a group of schools conducted by such a governing body,
 and that, where a group of schools including one or more special schools is conducted by such a governing body, the governing body are appropriately constituted.
- (2) Regulations made for the purpose mentioned in subsection (1) above may modify sections 183 to 185 and 188 of this Act and Schedule 11 to this Act.
- (3) Where that Chapter applies to special schools by virtue of regulations—
 - (a) section 22(1) of this Act shall not be read as applying to such schools,
 - (b) a special school conducted by a governing body incorporated under that Chapter shall be known as a grant-maintained special school, and
 - (c) references in Chapter I of Part V of this Act to a group of grant-maintained schools include a group of one or more grant-maintained special schools together with one or more grant-maintained schools.

188 Approval of special schools

- (1) The Secretary of State may approve any school which is specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with special educational needs, not being a maintained or grant-maintained school, and may give his approval before or after the school is established.
- (2) Regulations may make provision as to the requirements which are to be complied with as a condition of approval under subsection (1) above.
- (3) Any school which—
 - (a) is established in pursuance of proposals approved under section 184 of this Act, or
 - (b) immediately before the coming into force of this section, is a special school,
 shall be treated, subject to subsection (4) below, as approved under this section.

- (4) Regulations may make provision as to—
 - (a) the requirements which are to be complied with by a school while approved under this section, and
 - (b) the withdrawal of approval from a school (including approval treated as given under subsection (3) above) at the request of the proprietor or on the ground that there has been a failure to comply with any prescribed requirement.
- (5) Without prejudice to the generality of subsections (2) and (4) above, the requirements which may be imposed by the regulations include requirements—
 - (a) which call for arrangements to be approved by the Secretary of State, or
 - (b) as to the organisation of any special school as a primary school or as a secondary school.
- (6) Regulations shall make provision for securing that, so far as practicable, every pupil attending a special school—
 - (a) receives religious education and attends religious worship, or
 - (b) is withdrawn from receiving such education or from attendance at such worship in accordance with the wishes of his parent.
- (7) Where approval is withdrawn from a maintained special school or grant-maintained special school, the local education authority or, as the case may be, the governing body shall serve under section 183 of this Act notice of their proposals to discontinue the school.
- (8) For the purposes of proposals made under subsection (7) above—
 - (a) that section shall have effect as if the school had not ceased to be a special school on the withdrawal of the approval, and
 - (b) section 184 of this Act shall have effect as if subsections (1) to (3), and the reference in subsection (4) to the rejection of proposals, were omitted.

189 Approval of independent schools

- (1) The Secretary of State may approve an independent school as suitable for the admission of children for whom statements are maintained under section 168 of this Act.
- (2) Regulations may make provision as to—
 - (a) the requirements which are to be complied with by a school as a condition of its approval under this section,
 - (b) the requirements which are to be complied with by a school while an approval under this section is in force in respect of it, and
 - (c) the withdrawal of approval from a school at the request of the proprietor or on the ground that there has been a failure to comply with any prescribed requirement.
- (3) An approval under this section may be given subject to such conditions (in addition to those prescribed) as the Secretary of State sees fit to impose.
- (4) In any case where there is a failure to comply with such a condition imposed under subsection (3) above, the Secretary of State may withdraw his approval.
- (5) No person shall so exercise his functions under this Part of this Act that a child with special educational needs is educated in an independent school unless—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) the school is for the time being approved by the Secretary of State as suitable for the admission of children for whom statements are maintained under section 168 of this Act, or
- (b) the Secretary of State consents to the child being educated there.

190 Provision of education at non-maintained schools

- (1) Subsection (2) below applies where—
 - (a) special educational provision in respect of a child with special educational needs is made at a school which is not a maintained school, and
 - (b) either the name of the school is specified in a statement in respect of the child under section 168 of this Act or the local education authority are satisfied that his interests require the necessary special educational provision to be made for him at a school which is not a maintained school and that it is appropriate for the child to be provided with education at the particular school.
- (2) Where this subsection applies, the local education authority shall—
 - (a) pay the whole of the fees payable in respect of the education provided for him at the school, and
 - (b) if board and lodging are provided for the child at the school and the authority are satisfied that the necessary special educational provision cannot be provided for him at the school unless the board and lodging are also provided, pay the whole of the fees payable in respect of the board and lodging.
- (3) In this section, “maintained school” means—
 - (a) a school maintained by a local education authority,
 - (b) a grant-maintained school, and
 - (c) a grant-maintained special school.

Variation of deeds

191 Variation of trust deeds etc. by order

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order make such modifications of any trust deed or other instrument relating to a school as, after consultation with the governing body or other proprietor of the school, appear to him to be necessary to enable the governing body or proprietor to meet any requirement imposed by regulations under section 188 or 189 of this Act.
- (2) Any modification made by an order under this section may be made to have permanent effect or to have effect for such period as may be specified in the order.

PART IV

SCHOOL ATTENDANCE

School attendance orders

192 School attendance orders

- (1) If it appears to a local education authority that a child of compulsory school age in their area is not receiving suitable education, either by regular attendance at school or otherwise, they shall serve a notice in writing on the parent requiring him to satisfy them within the period specified in the notice that the child is receiving such education.
- (2) That period shall not be less than fifteen days beginning with the day on which the notice is served.
- (3) If—
 - (a) a parent on whom a notice has been served under subsection (1) above fails to satisfy the local education authority, within the period specified in the notice, that the child is receiving suitable education, and
 - (b) in the opinion of the authority it is expedient that the child should attend school,the authority shall serve on the parent an order (referred to in this Act as a “school attendance order”), in such form as may be prescribed, requiring him to cause the child to become a registered pupil at a school named in the order.
- (4) A school attendance order shall (subject to any amendment made by the local education authority) continue in force for so long as the child is of compulsory school age, unless—
 - (a) it is revoked by the authority, or
 - (b) a direction is made in respect of it under section 198(2) or 202(5) of this Act.
- (5) Where a maintained or grant-maintained school is named in a school attendance order, the local education authority shall inform the governing body and the head teacher.
- (6) Where a maintained or grant-maintained school is named in a school attendance order the governing body (and, in the case of a maintained school, the local education authority) shall admit the child to the school.
- (7) Subsection (6) above does not affect any power to exclude from a school a pupil who is already a registered pupil there.
- (8) In this section “suitable education”, in relation to a child, means efficient full-time education suitable to his age, ability and aptitude and to any special educational needs he may have.

193 Choice of school: child without statement of special educational needs

- (1) This section applies where a local education authority are required by virtue of section 192(3) of this Act to serve a school attendance order in respect of a child, other than a child for whom they maintain a statement under section 168 of this Act.
- (2) Before serving the order, the authority shall serve on the parent a notice in writing—
 - (a) informing him of their intention to serve the order,

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) specifying the school which the authority intend to name in the order and, if they think fit, one or more other schools which they regard as suitable alternatives, and
 - (c) stating the effect of subsections (3) to (6) below.
- (3) If the notice specifies one or more alternative schools and the parent selects one of them within the period of fifteen days beginning with the day on which the notice is served, the school selected by him shall be named in the order.
- (4) If—
 - (a) within the period mentioned in subsection (3) above—
 - (i) the parent applies for the child to be admitted to a school maintained by a local education authority and, where that authority are not the authority by whom the notice was served, notifies the latter authority of the application, or
 - (ii) the parent applies for the child to be admitted to a grant-maintained school and notifies the authority by whom the notice was served of the application, and
 - (b) the child is offered a place at the school as a result of the application, that school shall be named in the order.
- (5) If—
 - (a) within the period mentioned in subsection (3) above, the parent applies to the local education authority by whom the notice was served for education to be provided for the child at a school which is not maintained by a local education authority and is not a grant-maintained school, and
 - (b) the child is offered a place at the school under arrangements made by the authority under which the fees payable in respect of the education provided at the school are to be paid by them under section 6 of the Education (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1953,
 that school shall be named in the order.
- (6) If, within the period mentioned in subsection (3) above—
 - (a) the parent applies for the child to be admitted to a school which is not maintained by a local education authority and is not a grant-maintained school, and in respect of which no application is made under subsection (5) above, and notifies the local education authority by whom the notice was served of the application,
 - (b) the child is offered a place at the school as a result of the application, and
 - (c) the school is suitable to his age, ability and aptitude and to any special educational needs he may have,
 that school shall be named in the order.

194 Specification of schools in notices under section 193(2)

- (1) Subject to subsection (3) below, a local education authority shall not, if it appears to them that subsection (2) below applies in relation to any school, specify the school in a notice under section 193(2) of this Act unless they are responsible for determining the arrangements for the admission of pupils to the school.

- (2) This subsection applies where, if the child concerned were admitted to the school in accordance with a school attendance order resulting from the notice, the number of pupils at the school in the child's age group would exceed the number fixed—
- (a) in the case of a maintained school, in accordance with section 26 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (admissions to county and voluntary schools), and
 - (b) in the case of a grant-maintained school, in accordance with sections 149 to 151 of this Act,
- as the number of pupils in that age group which it is intended to admit to the school in the school year in which he would be admitted.
- (3) Subsection (1) above does not prevent a local education authority specifying in a notice under section 193(2) of this Act any maintained or grant-maintained school if there is no maintained or grant-maintained school in their area—
- (a) which subsection (1) above does not (apart from this subsection) prevent them from specifying, and
 - (b) which is, in their opinion, a reasonable distance from the home of the child concerned,
- and, in the opinion of the authority, the school is a reasonable distance from the home of the child concerned.
- (4) A local education authority shall not specify in a notice under section 193(2) of this Act a school from which the child concerned is permanently excluded.
- (5) Before deciding to specify a particular maintained or grant-maintained school in a notice under section 193(2) of this Act a local education authority shall consult—
- (a) the governing body, and
 - (b) if another local education authority are responsible for determining the arrangements for the admission of pupils to the school, that authority.
- (6) Where a local education authority decide to specify a particular maintained or grant-maintained school in a notice under section 193(2) of this Act they shall, before serving the notice, serve notice in writing of their decision on—
- (a) the governing body and head teacher of the school, and
 - (b) if another local education authority are responsible for determining the arrangements for the admission of pupils to the school, that authority.
- (7) A governing body or local education authority on whom notice is served under subsection (6) above may, within the period of fifteen days beginning with the day on which the notice was received, apply to the Secretary of State for a direction under this section and if they do so, shall inform the local education authority which served the notice.
- (8) Where the Secretary of State gives a direction under this section, the school or schools to be specified in the notice under section 193(2) of this Act shall be determined in accordance with the direction.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

195 Amendment of order at request of parent: child without statement of special educational needs

- (1) This section applies where a school attendance order is in force in respect of a child, other than a child for whom the local education authority maintain a statement under section 168 of this Act.
- (2) If at any time—
 - (a) the parent applies for the child to be admitted to a school maintained by a local education authority or grant-maintained school which is different from the school named in the order,
 - (b) the child is offered a place at the school as a result of the application, and
 - (c) the parent requests the local education authority by whom the order was served to amend it by substituting that school for the one currently named,the authority shall comply with the request.
- (3) If at any time—
 - (a) the parent applies to the authority for education to be provided for the child at a school which is not maintained by a local education authority or a grant-maintained school and which is different from the school named in the order,
 - (b) the child is offered a place at the school under arrangements made by the authority under which the fees payable in respect of the education provided at the school are to be paid by them under section 6 of the Education (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1953, and
 - (c) the parent requests the authority to amend the order by substituting that school for the one currently named,the authority shall comply with the request.
- (4) If at any time—
 - (a) the parent applies for the child to be admitted to a school which is not maintained by a local education authority and is not a grant-maintained school, which is different from the school named in the order and in respect of which no application is made under subsection (3) above,
 - (b) as a result of the application, the child is offered a place at the school, being a school which is suitable to his age, ability and aptitude and to any special educational needs he may have, and
 - (c) the parent requests the authority to amend the order by substituting that school for the one currently named,the authority shall comply with the request.

196 Choice of school: child with statement of special educational needs

- (1) Subsections (2) and (3) below apply where a local education authority are required by virtue of section 192(3) of this Act to serve a school attendance order in respect of a child for whom they maintain a statement under section 168 of this Act.
- (2) Where the statement specifies the name of a school that school shall be named in the order.
- (3) Where the statement does not specify the name of a school—
 - (a) the authority shall, in accordance with paragraph 10 of Schedule 10 to this Act, amend the statement so that it specifies the name of a school, and

(b) that school shall then be named in the order.

(4) Where—

- (a) a school attendance order is in force in respect of a child for whom the local education authority maintain a statement under section 168 of this Act, and
 - (b) the name of the school specified in the statement is changed,
- the local education authority shall amend the order accordingly.

197 Revocation of order at request of parent

- (1) This section applies where a school attendance order is in force in respect of a child.
- (2) If at any time the parent applies to the local education authority requesting that the order be revoked on the ground that arrangements have been made for the child to receive suitable education otherwise than at school, the authority shall comply with the request, unless they are of the opinion that no satisfactory arrangements have been made for the education of the child otherwise than at school.
- (3) If a parent is aggrieved by a refusal of the local education authority to comply with a request under subsection (2) above, he may refer the question to the Secretary of State.
- (4) Where a question is referred to the Secretary of State under subsection (3) above, he shall give such direction determining the question as he thinks fit.
- (5) Where the child in question is one for whom the authority maintain a statement under section 168 of this Act—
 - (a) subsections (2) to (4) above do not apply if the name of a school or other institution is specified in the statement, and
 - (b) in any other case a direction under subsection (4) above may require the authority to make such amendments in the statement as the Secretary of State considers necessary or expedient in consequence of his determination.
- (6) In this section, “suitable education” has the meaning given by section 192(8) of this Act.

School attendance: offences and education supervision orders

198 Offence: failure to comply with school attendance order

- (1) If a parent on whom a school attendance order is served fails to comply with the requirements of the order, he is guilty of an offence, unless he proves that he is causing the child to receive suitable education otherwise than at school.
- (2) If, in proceedings for an offence under this section, the parent is acquitted, the court may direct that the school attendance order shall cease to be in force.
- (3) A direction under subsection (2) above does not affect the duty of the local education authority to take further action under section 192 of this Act if at any time the authority are of the opinion that having regard to any change of circumstances it is expedient to do so.
- (4) In this section, “suitable education” has the meaning given by section 192(8) of this Act.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

199 Offence: failure to secure regular attendance at school of registered pupil

- (1) If a child of compulsory school age who is a registered pupil at a school fails to attend regularly at the school, his parent is guilty of an offence.
- (2) Subsections (3) to (6) below apply in proceedings for an offence under this section in respect of a child who is not a boarder at the school at which he is a registered pupil.
- (3) The child shall not be taken to have failed to attend regularly at the school by reason of his absence from the school—
 - (a) with leave,
 - (b) at any time when he was prevented from attending by reason of sickness or any unavoidable cause, or
 - (c) on any day exclusively set apart for religious observance by the religious body to which his parent belongs.
- (4) The child shall not be taken to have failed to attend regularly at the school if the parent proves—
 - (a) that the school at which the child is a registered pupil is not within walking distance of the child's home, and
 - (b) that no suitable arrangements have been made by the local education authority or the funding authority for any of the following—
 - (i) his transport to and from the school,
 - (ii) boarding accommodation for him at or near the school, and
 - (iii) enabling him to become a registered pupil at a school nearer to his home.
- (5) In subsection (4) above, “walking distance” means—
 - (a) in relation to a child who is under the age of eight years, two miles, and
 - (b) in relation to a child who has attained the age of eight years, three miles,
 in each case measured by the nearest available route.
- (6) If it is proved that the child has no fixed abode, subsection (4) above shall not apply, but the parent shall be acquitted if he proves—
 - (a) that he is engaged in a trade or business of such a nature as to require him to travel from place to place,
 - (b) that the child has attended at a school as a registered pupil as regularly as the nature of that trade or business permits, and
 - (c) if the child has attained the age of six years, that he has made at least two hundred attendances during the period of twelve months ending with the date on which the proceedings were instituted.
- (7) In proceedings for an offence under this section in respect of a child who is a boarder at the school at which he is a registered pupil, the child shall be taken to have failed to attend regularly at the school if he is absent from it without leave during any part of the school term at a time when he was not prevented from being present by reason of sickness or any unavoidable cause.
- (8) In this section “leave”, in relation to a school, means leave granted by any person authorised to do so by the governing body or proprietor of the school.

200 Presumption of age

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of any proceedings for an offence under section 198 or 199 of this Act.
- (2) In so far as it is material, the child in question shall be presumed to have been of compulsory school age at any time unless the parent proves the contrary.
- (3) Where a court is obliged by virtue of subsection (2) above to presume a child to have been of compulsory school age, section 95(1) of the Education Act 1944 (provisions as to evidence) does not apply.

201 Institution of proceedings and punishment

- (1) Proceedings for an offence under section 198 or 199 of this Act shall not be instituted except by a local education authority.
- (2) A person guilty of an offence under section 198 or 199 of this Act is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

202 Education supervision orders

- (1) Before instituting proceedings for an offence under section 198 or 199 of this Act, a local education authority shall consider whether it would be appropriate (instead of or as well as instituting the proceedings) to apply for an education supervision order with respect to the child.
- (2) The court—
 - (a) by which a person is convicted of an offence under section 198 of this Act, or
 - (b) before which a person is charged with an offence under section 199 of this Act,may direct the local education authority instituting the proceedings to apply for an education supervision order with respect to the child unless the authority, having consulted the appropriate local authority, decide that the child's welfare will be satisfactorily safeguarded even though no education supervision order is made.
- (3) Where, following such a direction, a local education authority decide not to apply for an education supervision order they shall inform the court of the reasons for their decision.
- (4) Unless the court has directed otherwise, the information required under subsection (3) above shall be given to the court before the end of the period of eight weeks beginning with the date on which the direction was given.
- (5) Where—
 - (a) a local education authority apply for an education supervision order with respect to a child who is the subject of a school attendance order, and
 - (b) the court decides that section 36(3) of the Children Act 1989 (education supervision orders) prevents it from making the order,the court may direct that the school attendance order shall cease to be in force.
- (6) In this section—

“appropriate local authority” has the same meaning as in section 36(9) of the Children Act 1989, and

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

“education supervision order” means an education supervision order under that Act.

Exemption

203 Exemption where child attains 5 years during term

Where—

- (a) a child attains the age of five years during the school term of a grant-maintained school, and
- (b) arrangements have been made for the admission of the child to that school at the start of the next school term,

then, during the period beginning with his attaining that age and ending with the start of that next school term, section 36 of the Education Act 1944 (duty of parents to secure the education of their children) and section 192 of this Act shall not apply to the child.

PART V

SCHOOLS FAILING TO GIVE AN ACCEPTABLE STANDARD OF EDUCATION

CHAPTER I

IDENTIFICATION OF SCHOOLS REQUIRING SPECIAL MEASURES

Introductory

204 Extension of the Education (Schools) Act 1992

- (1) This Chapter, in its application to inspections under section 9 of the Education (Schools) Act 1992 or by any member of the Inspectorate, applies to the inspection of any county, voluntary, maintained special, grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school.

- (2) In this Part of this Act—

“appropriate appointing authority” means, in relation to any aided or special agreement school—

- (a) the appropriate diocesan authority, if it is a Church of England school, Church in Wales school or Roman Catholic Church school, and
- (b) in any other case, the person who appoints the foundation governors,

“appropriate authority”, in relation to any county, voluntary or maintained special school, means the school’s governing body or, if the governing body do not have a delegated budget, the local education authority and, in relation to a grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school, means the school’s governing body,

“inspection by a member of the Inspectorate” means a section 9 inspection carried out by a member of the Inspectorate or an inspection under section 2(2)(b), 3(1), 6(2)(b) or 7(1) of that Act,

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

“member of the Inspectorate” means the Chief Inspector, any of Her Majesty’s Inspectors of Schools in England or, as the case may be, Wales and any additional inspector, and

“section 9 inspection” means an inspection under section 9 of that Act; and other expressions used in this Part and that Act have the same meaning in this Part as in that Act.

- (3) For the purposes of this Part of this Act, special measures are required to be taken in relation to a school if the school is failing or likely to fail to give its pupils an acceptable standard of education.
- (4) Paragraphs 9 to 12 of Schedule 2 to that Act shall cease to have effect in relation to county, voluntary, maintained special, grant-maintained and grant-maintained special schools.

Inspections and reports

205 Section 9 inspections by members of the Inspectorate

- (1) Where an inspection of a school is required under section 9 of the Education (Schools) Act 1992 but the Chief Inspector is satisfied that it is not reasonably practicable to secure that the school is inspected by a suitable registered inspector, he shall secure that it is inspected by a member of the Inspectorate.
- (2) Where an inspection is conducted by a member of the Inspectorate by virtue of this section, that Act shall have effect (unless the context otherwise requires) in relation to the inspection as if the member of the Inspectorate were a registered inspector.
- (3) If the Chief Inspector so elects in the case of any inspection of a school by a member of the Inspectorate under section 2(2)(b), 3(1), 6(2)(b) or 7(1) of that Act, that inspection shall be treated for the purposes of section 9(1) and (2) of that Act and sections 209 to 212 of this Act as if it were an inspection under section 9 of that Act and the member of the Inspectorate were a registered inspector.

206 Section 9 inspections by registered inspectors

- (1) Where a section 9 inspection by a registered inspector has been completed, the inspector shall make in writing a report of the inspection and a summary of the report.
- (2) Where the inspector is of the opinion that special measures are required to be taken in relation to the school he shall submit a draft of the report of the inspection to the Chief Inspector.
- (3) If the Chief Inspector so requests, an inspector who has submitted a draft under subsection (2) above shall provide the Chief Inspector with such further information as the Chief Inspector may specify.
- (4) The Chief Inspector shall inform an inspector who has submitted a draft under subsection (2) above whether he agrees or disagrees with the inspector’s opinion.
- (5) Where—
 - (a) the Chief Inspector informs the inspector that he disagrees with the inspector’s opinion, but

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) the inspector remains of the opinion that special measures are required to be taken in relation to the school,
the inspector may not make a report expressing that opinion unless the terms in which he makes the report are substantially the same (except as to the statement required by subsection (7)(b) below) as the draft or as a subsequent draft submitted to the Chief Inspector under this subsection.
- (6) Where a subsequent draft is submitted under subsection (5) above, the Chief Inspector shall inform the inspector whether he agrees or disagrees with the inspector's opinion.
- (7) A report made by a registered inspector who is of the opinion that special measures are required to be taken in relation to the school shall—
 - (a) state his opinion, and
 - (b) state whether the Chief Inspector agrees or disagrees with his opinion.
- (8) If a report of an inspection of a school by a registered inspector is made in circumstances where—
 - (a) he is of the opinion that special measures are not required to be taken in relation to the school, but
 - (b) in the latest report of an inspection of the school, the person making the report stated that in his opinion such measures were required to be taken and either that person was a member of the Inspectorate or the report stated that the Chief Inspector agreed with his opinion,
the person making the report shall state his opinion in the report.

207 Reports of inspections by members of the Inspectorate

- (1) Where on the completion of any inspection of a school under section 2(2)(b), 3(1), 6(2)(b) or 7(1) of the Education (Schools) Act 1992 by a member of the Inspectorate, he is of the opinion that special measures are required to be taken in relation to the school, he shall—
 - (a) prepare in writing a report of the inspection and a summary of the report, and
 - (b) state his opinion in the report.
- (2) If on the completion of any such inspection of a school by a member of the Inspectorate in circumstances where—
 - (a) he is of the opinion that special measures are not required to be taken in relation to the school, but
 - (b) in the latest report of an inspection of the school, the person making the report stated that in his opinion such measures were required to be taken and either that person was a member of the Inspectorate or the report stated that the Chief Inspector agreed with his opinion,
the member of the Inspectorate shall prepare in writing a report of the inspection and a summary of the report and state his opinion in the report.
- (3) A report of a section 9 inspection of a school by a member of the Inspectorate shall, if he is of the opinion that special measures are required to be taken in relation to the school, state his opinion.
- (4) If a report of a section 9 inspection of a school by a member of the Inspectorate is made in circumstances where—

- (a) he is of the opinion that special measures are not required to be taken in relation to the school, but
 - (b) in the latest report of an inspection of the school, the person making the report stated that in his opinion such measures were required to be taken and either that person was a member of the Inspectorate or the report stated that the Chief Inspector agreed with his opinion,
- the member of the Inspectorate shall state his opinion in the report.

208 Timing of section 9 inspections by registered inspectors

- (1) The carrying out of a section 9 inspection shall be completed by the time allowed under subsection (2) below and the making of the report required by section 206 of this Act shall be completed within the period allowed under subsection (2) below.
- (2) The time, and the period, allowed shall be such as may be prescribed, subject to any such extension of the period as the Chief Inspector may consider necessary to make; but the total period allowed must not exceed the prescribed period extended by three months.
- (3) The Chief Inspector shall give notice in writing of any extension under subsection (2) above to—
 - (a) the inspector,
 - (b) the local education authority in the case of a county, voluntary or maintained special school, and
 - (c) the governing body.
- (4) This section does not apply to a section 9 inspection carried out by a member of the Inspectorate.

209 Destination of reports

- (1) In the case of a report of a section 9 inspection of a school, the person making it shall without delay—
 - (a) send a copy of the report together with the summary of it to the appropriate authority for the school and, if it is a grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school, to the Secretary of State, and
 - (b) if in the case of a county, voluntary or maintained special school it states that he is of the opinion that special measures are required to be taken in relation to the school, and either that person is a member of the Inspectorate or the report states that the Chief Inspector agrees with his opinion, send a copy of the report and summary to the Secretary of State.
- (2) In the case of a report of an inspection of a school made by a member of the Inspectorate which is required by section 207(1)(b) of this Act to state that he is of the opinion that special measures are required to be taken in relation to the school, the member of the Inspectorate shall send a copy of the report together with the summary of it to the appropriate authority for the school and the Secretary of State.
- (3) In any case, copies of the report and summary shall be sent by the person who made the report—
 - (a) to the Chief Inspector (unless the report was made by a member of the Inspectorate),

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) to the head teacher of the school,
 - (c) in the case of a county, voluntary or maintained special school, to whichever of the local education authority and the governing body are not the appropriate authority,
 - (d) in the case of a school having foundation governors, to the person who appoints them and (if different) to the appropriate appointing authority,
 - (e) to any person named as a sponsor of the school in the instrument of government, and
 - (f) in the case of any school in a group of grant-maintained schools in respect of which any person has power to appoint an externally appointed core governor under a provision of the instrument of government made in pursuance of Schedule 8 to this Act, to that person.
- (4) The appropriate authority shall—
- (a) make a copy of any report and summary sent to the authority under subsection (1) or (2) above available for inspection by members of the public at such times and at such place as may be reasonable,
 - (b) provide a copy of the report and summary, free of charge or in prescribed cases on payment of such fee as they think fit (not exceeding the cost of supply), to any person who asks for one, and
 - (c) take such steps as are reasonably practicable to secure that every registered parent of a registered pupil at the school receives a copy of the summary as soon as is reasonably practicable.

Special measures

210 Special measures by appropriate authority

- (1) Where—
- (a) a report of a section 9 inspection of a school, or
 - (b) a report of an inspection of a school made by a member of the Inspectorate which is required by section 207(1)(b) of this Act to state that he is of the opinion that special measures are required to be taken in relation to the school,
- is sent to the appropriate authority they shall prepare a written statement of the action which they propose to take in the light of the report and the period within which they propose to take it.
- (2) It is the duty of the appropriate authority to prepare the statement within the period allowed by this subsection, that is—
- (a) such period as may be prescribed, or
 - (b) if, in the case of any report where the person making it states that he is of the opinion that special measures are required to be taken in relation to the school, and either that person is a member of the Inspectorate or the report states that the Chief Inspector agrees with his opinion, the Secretary of State is of the opinion that the urgency of the case requires a shorter period, such period as the Secretary of State may direct,
- but this subsection does not relieve the appropriate authority of any duty to prepare a statement which has not been performed within that period.
- (3) Where such a statement has been prepared by the appropriate authority they shall, before the end of the prescribed period, send copies of it—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) to the Chief Inspector,
 - (b) in the case of a county, voluntary or maintained special school, to whichever of the governing body and the local education authority are not the appropriate authority,
 - (c) in the case of a grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school, to the Secretary of State, and
 - (d) in such circumstances as may be prescribed, to such other persons (if any) as may be prescribed.
- (4) If in the case of a county, voluntary or maintained special school—
 - (a) the statement is prepared in response to a report of an inspection of the school in which the person who made the report expresses the opinion that special measures are required to be taken in relation to the school, and
 - (b) that person is a member of the Inspectorate or the report states that the Chief Inspector agrees with his opinion,the appropriate authority shall, before the end of the prescribed period, send a copy of the statement to the Secretary of State.
- (5) The appropriate authority shall also send a copy of the statement—
 - (a) in the case of a school having foundation governors, to the person who appoints them and (if different) to the appropriate appointing authority,
 - (b) to any person named as a sponsor of the school in the instrument of government, and
 - (c) in the case of any school in a group of grant-maintained schools in respect of which any person has power to appoint an externally appointed core governor under a provision of the instrument of government made in pursuance of Schedule 8 to this Act, to that person.
- (6) The appropriate authority shall—
 - (a) make any statement prepared by them under this section available for inspection by members of the public, at such times and at such place as may be reasonable,
 - (b) provide a copy of the statement, free of charge or in prescribed cases on payment of such fee as they think fit (not exceeding the cost of supply), and
 - (c) take such steps as are reasonably practicable to secure that every registered parent of a registered pupil at the school receives a copy of the statement as soon as is reasonably practicable.
- (7) Where the governing body of a school have prepared a statement under this section, they shall in the report referred to in section 30 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 or, as the case may be, in paragraph 8 of Schedule 6 to this Act state the extent to which the proposals set out in the statement (or if there is more than one, the most recent statement) have been carried into effect.

211 Additional special measures by local education authority

- (1) This section applies in circumstances where—
 - (a) in a report of an inspection of a county, voluntary or maintained special school the governing body of which have a delegated budget the person who made the report expressed the opinion that special measures were required to be taken in relation to the school,

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) either that person was a member of the Inspectorate or the report stated that the Chief Inspector agreed with his opinion, and
 - (c) the local education authority receive a copy of a statement prepared under section 210 of this Act in response to the report or the period prescribed for the purposes of subsection (3) of that section expires.
- (2) The local education authority shall—
- (a) prepare a written statement of any action they propose to take in the light of the report, and the period within which they propose to take such action, or, if they do not propose to take any such action, of their reasons for not doing so, and
 - (b) send a copy of the statement prepared under paragraph (a) above, together with their comments on any statement prepared under section 210 of this Act of which they have received a copy, to the Secretary of State and the Chief Inspector and, in the case of an aided or special agreement school, to the person who appoints the foundation governors and (if different) to the appropriate appointing authority.
- (3) It is the duty of the local education authority to prepare the statement within the period allowed by this subsection, that is—
- (a) such period as may be prescribed, or
 - (b) if in the case of any report the Secretary of State is of the opinion that the urgency of the case requires a shorter period, such period as the Secretary of State may direct,
- but this subsection does not relieve the local education authority of any duty to prepare a statement which has not been performed within that period.

212 Monitoring special measures and further inspections

- (1) This section applies in circumstances where—
- (a) in a report of an inspection of a school the person who made it expressed the opinion that special measures were required to be taken in relation to the school,
 - (b) either that person was a member of the Inspectorate or the report stated that the Chief Inspector agreed with his opinion,
 - (c) a statement has been prepared under section 210 of this Act or the period prescribed for the purposes of subsection (3) of that section has expired, and
 - (d) if any registered inspector or member of the Inspectorate has made a later report of an inspection of the school, he did not express the opinion in the report that special measures were not required to be taken in relation to the school.
- (2) Regulations may make provision with a view to securing that any measures taken by the appropriate authority and, in the case of a school which has a delegated budget, the local education authority for improving the standard of education at the school are monitored in accordance with the regulations by such persons as may be prescribed.
- (3) The regulations may, in particular, provide for reports to be made, by such persons and at such intervals as may be prescribed.

- (4) The regulations may authorise the Secretary of State to require the Chief Inspector to conduct further inspections of the school and prepare further reports of such inspections.
- (5) In respect of cases where any report prepared in pursuance of a requirement imposed by virtue of subsection (4) above—
 - (a) states that, in the opinion of the person who prepared the report, special measures are required to be taken in relation to the school, but the grounds for that opinion are substantially different from the grounds for the opinion in any preceding report by a registered inspector or member of the Inspectorate, or
 - (b) states that, in the opinion of that person, special measures are not required to be taken in relation to the school,the regulations may make provision corresponding to any of the provisions made by this Chapter.

CHAPTER II

NEW POWERS OVER SCHOOLS REQUIRING SPECIAL MEASURES

Miscellaneous powers and restrictions

213 Schools to which sections 214 to 217 apply

Sections 214 to 217 of this Act apply only to county, voluntary and maintained special schools and do not apply to a school at any time unless, at that time—

- (a) there is a report of an inspection of the school in which the person who made it expressed the opinion that special measures were required to be taken in relation to the school,
- (b) either that person was a member of the Inspectorate or the report stated that the Chief Inspector agreed with his opinion,
- (c) if any registered inspector or member of the Inspectorate has made a later report of an inspection of the school under Chapter I, he did not express the opinion in the report that special measures were not required to be taken in relation to the school, and
- (d) the Secretary of State has not exercised his powers under section 220 of this Act in relation to the school.

214 Appointment of additional governors

- (1) If at any time—
 - (a) this section applies in relation to any county, controlled or maintained special school, and
 - (b) the conditions in subsection (2) below are satisfied,the local education authority may appoint such number of additional governors as they think fit.
- (2) Those conditions are that—
 - (a) a copy of a statement prepared—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (i) in the case of a school not having a delegated budget, under section 210 of this Act, and
 - (ii) in any other case, under section 211 of this Act,

has been sent to the Secretary of State,

 - (b) the local education authority have received a notice in writing in which the Secretary of State acknowledges receipt of the copy, and
 - (c) not less than ten days have elapsed since the date of the notice.
- (3) The Secretary of State may in respect of any particular school determine that subsection (2)(c) above shall have effect as if the reference to ten days were to such shorter period as he may determine.
- (4) In relation to any appointment made by the local education authority by virtue of subsection (1) above to the governing body of a school—
 - (a) the instrument of government for the school, or
 - (b) if the governing body of the school are constituted in accordance with arrangements under section 12 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (temporary governing bodies for new schools), those arrangements,

shall have effect as if, notwithstanding paragraph (b) of section 3(2), (3), (4) and (5) of that Act (governing bodies for county schools, etc.), the instrument or, as the case may be, arrangements authorised the local education authority to appoint such number of additional governors as they think fit.
- (5) If at any time—
 - (a) this section applies in relation to an aided or special agreement school, and
 - (b) the conditions in subsection (6) below are satisfied,

the appropriate appointing authority may appoint such number of additional foundation governors as they think fit.
- (6) Those conditions are—
 - (a) that a period of ten days has elapsed since—
 - (i) in the case of a school not having a delegated budget, the period prescribed for the purposes of section 210(3) of this Act expired, and
 - (ii) in any other case, the period allowed under section 211(3) of this Act for preparing a statement under that section expired, or
 - (b) that the Secretary of State has received a copy of a statement prepared—
 - (i) in the case of a school not having a delegated budget, under section 210 of this Act, and
 - (ii) in any other case, under section 211 of this Act,

and has served notice in writing on the appropriate appointing authority stating that the power conferred by subsection (5) above is exercisable.
- (7) The Secretary of State may by notice in writing served on the appropriate appointing authority determine that subsection (6)(a) above shall have effect as if the reference to ten days were to such shorter period as he may determine.
- (8) In the case of any appointment made by virtue of subsection (5) above to the governing body of a school—
 - (a) the instrument of government for the school, or
 - (b) if the governing body are constituted in accordance with arrangements under section 12 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986, those arrangements,

shall have effect as if, notwithstanding section 4(3) of that Act (foundation governors for aided and special agreement schools), the instrument or, as the case may be, arrangements authorised the appropriate appointing authority to appoint such number of additional foundation governors as they think fit.

- (9) Where in the case of any aided or special agreement school which is not a Church of England school, Church in Wales school or Roman Catholic Church school there are different powers to appoint foundation governors, references in this section (other than subsection (6) and (7)) to the appropriate appointing authority are to—
- (a) all those persons who have any such power acting jointly, or
 - (b) if they are unable to agree, such of them acting jointly, or such one of them, as the Secretary of State may, after consulting all those persons, determine.

215 Suspension of right to delegated budget

- (1) If at any time—
- (a) this section applies in relation to any county, controlled or maintained special school in respect of which financial delegation is required, and
 - (b) the conditions in subsection (2) below are satisfied,
- the local education authority may by giving the governing body of the school notice of suspension suspend the right to a delegated budget with effect from the receipt by the governing body of the notice; and a copy of the notice shall be given to the head teacher of the school at the same time as the notice is given to the governing body.
- (2) Those conditions are that—
- (a) a copy of a statement prepared under section 211 of this Act has been sent to the Secretary of State,
 - (b) the local education authority have received a notice in writing in which the Secretary of State acknowledges receipt of the copy, and
 - (c) not less than ten days have elapsed since the date of the notice.
- (3) The Secretary of State may in respect of any particular school determine that subsection (2)(c) above shall have effect as if the reference to ten days were to such shorter period as he may determine.
- (4) A suspension by virtue of this section shall have effect for the purposes of Chapter III of Part I of the Education Reform Act 1988 as if made under section 37 of that Act, but subsection (8)(a) of that section (right to appeal against imposition of suspension) does not apply in relation to a suspension by virtue of this section.
- (5) Expressions used in this section and that Chapter have the same meaning as in that Chapter.

216 Grouping and de-grouping

- (1) If at any time—
- (a) this section applies in relation to any county, voluntary or maintained special school, and
 - (b) the local education authority have received a copy of the report referred to in section 213(a) of this Act,

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

they may not pass a resolution under section 9 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (grouping of schools under single governing body) for two or more schools to be grouped if any of the schools is a school to which this section applies.

(2) If at any time—

- (a) this section applies in relation to any county, voluntary or maintained special school, and
- (b) the Secretary of State has received a copy of the report referred to in section 213(a) of this Act,

he may by order under section 9(6) of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 bring to an end any grouping under that section of schools which include a school to which this section applies, whether or not the grouping is one in respect of which his consent was at any time required under section 10 of that Act.

217 Prohibition on ballot under Part II

(1) If at any time—

- (a) this section applies in relation to any county or voluntary school, and
- (b) the governing body have received a copy of the report referred to in section 213(a) of this Act,

then, notwithstanding anything in sections 25 or 26 of this Act, the governing body of the school may not secure that any ballot is held under Chapter II of Part II of this Act.

(2) If at any time—

- (a) this section applies in relation to a maintained special school, and
- (b) the governing body have received a copy of the report referred to in section 213(a) of this Act,

regulations under section 186 of this Act shall not apply in relation to the school.

Education associations

218 Power to establish education associations

(1) Where—

- (a) the powers conferred by section 220 of this Act are exercisable by the Secretary of State in relation to a school, and
- (b) he is of the opinion that the school should be conducted by a body corporate established under this section and that no suitable body corporate have been so established,

he may by order provide for the establishment of a body corporate under the name given in the order.

(2) Bodies corporate established under this section shall be known as “education associations”.

(3) An education association shall consist of not less than five members appointed by the Secretary of State, one of whom shall be so appointed as chairman.

(4) Before making an order under this section in the case of a voluntary school, the Secretary of State shall consult—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) if it is a Church of England school, Church in Wales school or Roman Catholic Church school, the appropriate diocesan authority, and
 - (b) in any other case, the person who appoints the foundation governors.
- (5) An education association—
 - (a) must include at least one member who appears to the Secretary of State to have experience of, and to have shown capacity in, the provision of primary or secondary education or to have held, and shown capacity in, any position carrying responsibility for the provision of such education,
 - (b) if the association conduct any school which was a voluntary school, must include at least one member who appears to the Secretary of State to have experience of, and to have shown capacity in, the provision of education in voluntary schools, and
 - (c) if the association conduct a special school, must include at least one member who appears to the Secretary of State to have experience of, and to have shown capacity in, providing for children with special educational needs,but one person may satisfy the requirement in paragraph (a) above as well as that in paragraph (b) or (c) above.
- (6) Schedule 12 to this Act has effect in respect of education associations.
- (7) Subject to the following provisions of this Chapter—
 - (a) references in any enactment to the governing body of any school, or to the foundation governors of any school, are to be read, in relation to a school conducted by an education association, as references to that association, and
 - (b) references in any enactment to the governors of any school are to be read, in relation to a school conducted by an education association, as references to the members of the association.
- (8) Where an education association conduct more than one school, then, subject to the following provisions of this Chapter, any provision of an enactment which applies to schools shall apply separately in relation to each of the schools.

219 Supervision of education associations by the Secretary of State

- (1) An education association shall, in exercising their functions, comply with any directions given by the Secretary of State.
- (2) Before giving a direction under this section, the Secretary of State shall consult the education association or (as the case may be) each education association to which the direction applies unless, for reasons of urgency, it is not in his opinion reasonably practicable for him to do so.
- (3) The Secretary of State shall publish any directions given by him under this section in such manner as he thinks fit.

220 Transfer of responsibility for conducting school to an education association

- (1) The powers conferred by this section are exercisable by the Secretary of State in relation to any county school or voluntary school at any time if, at that time—
 - (a) there is a report of an inspection of the school in which the person who made it expressed the opinion that special measures were required to be taken in relation to the school,

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) either that person was a member of the Inspectorate or the report stated that the Chief Inspector agreed with his opinion,
- (c) the Secretary of State has received a statement prepared under section 210 of this Act or the period allowed by subsection (2) of that section for the preparation of such a statement has expired, and
- (d) if any registered inspector or member of the Inspectorate has made a later report of an inspection of the school, he did not express the opinion in the report that special measures were not required to be taken in relation to the school.

(2) Where—

- (a) the powers conferred by this section are exercisable by the Secretary of State in relation to a school,
- (b) he is of the opinion that the school should be conducted by an education association, and
- (c) if the school is a voluntary school, he has consulted the person who appoints the school's foundation governors and such other persons as he thinks appropriate,

he may by order provide for the school to be conducted by an education association named in the order as from such date as may be specified in the order (referred to in this Part of this Act as the “transfer date”).

- (3) On making an order under this section the Secretary of State shall give notice in writing of the order to the governing body and head teacher of the school, to the local education authority and (except in the case of a school in Wales before the Schools Funding Council for Wales begin to exercise their functions) the funding authority.
- (4) On the transfer date—
 - (a) the local education authority whose duty it was immediately before that date to maintain the school as a county or voluntary school shall cease to have that duty, and
 - (b) any special agreement relating to the school shall cease to have effect.

221 Effect of order under section 220

- (1) This section applies in relation to a school where an order under section 220 of this Act has been made.
- (2) A school conducted by an education association may not cease to be so conducted unless—
 - (a) it becomes a grant-maintained school, or
 - (b) the school is discontinued.
- (3) The following subsections have effect subject to the following provisions of this Chapter.
- (4) Subject to subsection (7) below, references in any enactment to grant-maintained schools include schools conducted by education associations.
- (5) References in any enactment to schools the governing bodies of which are incorporated under Chapter II of Part II of this Act (however expressed) include schools conducted by education associations.

- (6) Subject to subsection (7) below, references in any enactment—
 - (a) to any school becoming grant-maintained (whether the reference is to its acquiring grant-maintained status or is expressed in any other form), or
 - (b) to the date of implementation of the proposals under which it becomes grant-maintained,are in the case of schools conducted by education associations references to the school beginning to be conducted by the association or, as the case may be, to the transfer date.
- (7) References in any enactment to schools the governing bodies of which are incorporated under Chapter IV of Part II of this Act (however expressed) do not include schools conducted by education associations.

222 Functions of education associations

- (1) Where an order under section 220 of this Act provides for an education association to conduct a school, the association may as from the transfer date conduct the school; and their power under this subsection is to conduct a school of the same description as the school immediately before that date.
- (2) An education association shall conduct any school for which they are the governing body so as to secure, so far as it is practicable to do so, the elimination of any deficiencies in the conduct of the school identified in any report made by a registered inspector or member of the Inspectorate.
- (3) A school conducted by an education association shall not be regarded as of a different description, where changes have been made in the character or premises of the school since the transfer date, to that immediately before that date if the changes—
 - (a) did not require authorisation under Chapter VII of Part II of this Act, or
 - (b) were authorised under that Chapter.
- (4) Subject to any provision made by the articles of government for the school, an education association may provide education at any school conducted by them which is neither primary nor secondary education if—
 - (a) it is part-time education suitable to the requirements of persons of any age over compulsory school age, or full-time education suitable to the requirements of persons who have attained the age of nineteen years,
 - (b) it is part-time education suitable to the requirements of junior pupils who have not attained the age of five years and the school provides full-time education for junior pupils of the same age, or
 - (c) they do so as agents for a local education authority under arrangements made with the authority for the purpose.

223 Conduct of school

- (1) Each school conducted by an education association shall be conducted in accordance with an instrument to be known as the articles of government.
- (2) Subject to any express provision of the articles of government, the school shall be conducted in accordance with any trust deed relating to it.
- (3) The initial articles of government for such a school shall be such as are prescribed and, subject to subsection (4) below, shall have effect as from the transfer date.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (4) Such of the articles as may be prescribed shall have effect as from such date prior to the transfer date as may be prescribed.
- (5) The education association may, with the consent of the Secretary of State—
 - (a) make new articles of government in place of the existing articles for the school, or
 - (b) modify the existing articles for the school.
- (6) The Secretary of State may by a direction under this section, in the case of schools conducted by education associations, any class of such schools specified in the direction or any particular school conducted by an education association so specified, require each education association conducting any school to which the direction applies to modify its articles of government in any manner so specified.
- (7) Before giving a direction under this section, the Secretary of State shall consult each education association conducting any school to which the direction applies.

224 School conducted by education association acquiring grant-maintained status

- (1) Where the Secretary of State—
 - (a) has received a copy of a report under section 227(2) of this Act in respect of a school conducted by an education association, and
 - (b) is of the opinion that the school should become a grant-maintained school,
 he may give notice in writing of his opinion to the head teacher of the school, the education association, the local education authority and (except in the case of a school in Wales before the Schools Funding Council for Wales have begun to exercise their functions) the funding authority.
- (2) An education association which receive a notice under subsection (1) above in respect of a school shall, within the period of three months beginning with the receipt of the notice, publish proposals under section 32 of this Act.
- (3) In relation to proposals published under section 32 of this Act by virtue of this section and the incorporation of a governing body in pursuance of such proposals, Chapters II and V of Part II of this Act shall have effect—
 - (a) as if the school to which the proposals relate had continued, after the transfer date, to be a county or, as the case may be, voluntary school, and
 - (b) with such other modifications as may be prescribed.

225 Discontinuance of school conducted by education association

- (1) Where the Secretary of State is of the opinion that a school conducted by an education association should be discontinued, he shall give notice in writing of his opinion and of the discontinuance date to—
 - (a) the education association,
 - (b) the local education authority,
 - (c) the funding authority (except in the case of a school in Wales before the Schools Funding Council for Wales have begun to exercise their functions), and
 - (d) if the school provides education to which section 2(1) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 applies, the appropriate further education funding council.

- (2) The education association shall cease to conduct the school—
 - (a) on the date specified in the notice, or
 - (b) if at the request of the education association the Secretary of State subsequently fixes another date (whether in substitution for the date specified in the notice or in substitution for a date previously fixed under this subsection), on that date.
- (3) Where the Secretary of State has given notice under this section, he may by order make provision for the disposal of the school property and the discharge of any liabilities of the education association in respect of the school.
- (4) An order under subsection (3) above may make any such provision (except provision for the dissolution of the education association) as is made by, or may be made by an order under, sections 111 to 116 of this Act where proposals for the discontinuance of a grant-maintained school have been approved under section 106 of this Act.

226 Winding-up of education association

- (1) Where subsection (2) below applies to the school or, as the case may be, each of the schools conducted or formerly conducted by an education association, the Secretary of State may by order provide for the dissolution of the association and the transfer to him of the property, rights and liabilities of the association.
- (2) This section applies where—
 - (a) the Secretary of State has approved proposals for the school to become a grant-maintained school, or
 - (b) the Secretary of State has given notice under section 225 of this Act of his opinion that the school should be discontinued.

227 Reports showing school no longer requires special measures

- (1) Where, on the completion of any inspection of a school conducted by an education association under section 2(2)(b), 3(1), 6(2)(b) or 7(1) of the Education (Schools) Act 1992 by a member of the Inspectorate, he is of the opinion that special measures are not required to be taken in relation to the school, he shall prepare in writing a report of the inspection and a summary of the report and state his opinion in the report.
- (2) The member of the Inspectorate shall send a copy of the report, together with a summary of it, to the head teacher of the school, the education association and the Secretary of State.
- (3) The education association shall—
 - (a) make any copy report and summary sent to them under subsection (2) above available for inspection by members of the public at such times and at such place as may be reasonable,
 - (b) provide a copy of the report and summary, free of charge or in prescribed cases on payment of such fee as they think fit (not exceeding the cost of supply), to any person who asks for one, and
 - (c) take such steps as are reasonably practicable to secure that every registered parent of a registered pupil at the school receives a copy of the summary as soon as is reasonably practicable.
- (4) Section 9 of that Act does not apply to schools conducted by education associations.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

228 Regulations for the purposes of Chapter II

- (1) Regulations may provide for any enactments relating to grant-maintained schools (or schools including grant-maintained schools), including enactments relating to the acquisition of grant-maintained status, to have effect in relation to—
 - (a) the transfer to an education association under section 220 of this Act of responsibility for the conduct of any school and the subsequent conduct of the school by the association,
 - (b) the discontinuance under section 225 of this Act of any school conducted by an education association, and
 - (c) the transfer to a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals published by virtue of section 224 of this Act of responsibility for the conduct of any school conducted by an education association,
 with such modifications as seem to the Secretary of State to be necessary or desirable.
- (2) Subsection (1) above does not apply in relation to schools which are or were maintained special schools; but regulations may provide for sections 220 to 227 of this Act to have effect in relation to any such schools as they have effect in relation to county schools but with such modifications as seem to the Secretary of State to be necessary or desirable.
- (3) Regulations may make such provision as the Secretary of State considers necessary or desirable in relation to—
 - (a) the transfer to an education association under section 220 of this Act of responsibility for the conduct of any maintained special school and the subsequent conduct of the school by the association, and
 - (b) where a former maintained special school is being conducted by an education association, the discontinuance of the school under section 225 of this Act.
- (4) In relation to any former maintained special school being conducted by an education association—
 - (a) section 186 of this Act shall apply as it applies to any maintained special school, but as if the reference in subsection (1) to the school ceasing to be maintained by the local education authority were to its ceasing to be conducted by an education association, and
 - (b) section 224 of this Act shall apply—
 - (i) as if the reference in subsection (1) to a grant-maintained school were to a grant-maintained special school,
 - (ii) as if the reference in subsection (2) to section 32 of this Act were to section 186 of this Act, and
 - (iii) with the omission of subsection (3).

PART VI

MISCELLANEOUS

Establishment, alteration etc. of maintained schools

229 Proposals for establishment, etc. of schools by local education authority

- (1) In section 12 of the Education Act 1980 (establishment and alteration of county schools) in subsection (1), after “county school” in paragraph (d) there is inserted “or to transfer a county school to a new site in the area” and, after that subsection, there is inserted—

“(1A) Before publishing the proposals the local education authority shall consult such persons as appear to them to be appropriate; and in discharging their duty under this subsection, the authority shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.

(1B) The Secretary of State shall publish any guidance given by him for the purposes of subsection (1A) above in such manner as he thinks fit.”

- (2) In subsection (3) of that section—

- (a) “voluntary” is omitted, and
- (b) after “affected by the proposals” there is inserted “by the appropriate further education funding council (if the proposals affect the provision of education to which section 2(1) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 applies)”.

- (3) Where—

- (a) an order under section 12 of this Act applies to the area of a local education authority, and
- (b) the authority publish proposals under section 12 of that Act which affect the provision of relevant education in the area,

the funding authority shall be included among the persons who may submit objections to the proposals.

230 Proposals for establishment, etc. of voluntary schools by promoters, etc

- (1) In section 13 of the Education Act 1980 (establishment and alteration of voluntary schools) in subsection (1), after “the school” in paragraph (b) there is inserted “or to transfer the school to a new site” and, after subsection (1A), there is inserted—

“(1B) Before publishing any proposals under this section, the persons concerned shall—

- (a) in the case of proposals under subsection (1)(a) above, consult the local education authority, and
- (b) in the case of proposals under subsection (1)(a) or (b) above, consult such other persons as appear to them to be appropriate;

and in discharging their duty under this subsection, they shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.

(1C) The Secretary of State shall publish any guidance given by him for the purposes of subsection (1B) above in such manner as he thinks fit.”

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (2) In subsection (3) of that section—
 - (a) “voluntary” is omitted, and
 - (b) after “affected by the proposals” there is inserted “by the appropriate further education funding council (if the proposals affect the provision of education to which section 2(1) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 applies)”.
- (3) After subsection (3) of that section there is inserted—

“(3A) Where the proposals are to transfer a school to a site in a different area, objections under subsection (3) above to the proposals may also be made by any ten or more local government electors for that area.”
- (4) In subsection (6) of that section, after “below” there is inserted—
 - “(a) in the case of any proposals approved by the Secretary of State to transfer a controlled school to a new site, it shall be the duty of the local education authority to implement the proposals (and any associated proposals for a change in the character of the school) so far as they involve the provision of premises or the removal or provision of equipment, and
 - (b) in any other case”.
- (5) At the end of that section there is added—

“(8) Where proposals under this section for the transfer of a school to a site in a different area are approved—

 - (a) in the case of any voluntary school—
 - (i) the references in subsection (6) above to the local education authority are to the authority for the new area, and
 - (ii) upon the transfer the duty to maintain the school shall transfer to that authority, and
 - (b) in the case of any controlled school, the First Schedule to the Education Act 1946 (provision of premises by maintaining authority) shall apply as if the duty to maintain the school had been transferred to the local education authority for the new area.”
- (6) Where—
 - (a) an order under section 12 of this Act applies to the area of a local education authority, and
 - (b) any persons publish proposals under section 13 of that Act which affect the provision of relevant education in the area,

the funding authority shall be included among the persons who may submit objections to the proposals.

Nursery education

231 Nursery education in grant-maintained schools

- (1) No person may—
 - (a) publish proposals under section 48 or 49 of this Act for the establishment of any nursery school, or

- (b) publish proposals under section 96 or 97 of this Act, or give notice of proposals under section 183(3) or (4) of this Act, for a school to become a nursery school.
- (2) Subject to subsection (1) above, proposals under sections 48, 49, 96, 97 or 183(3) or (4) of this Act may, in particular, be made for the purpose of securing the provision of education for junior pupils who have not attained the age of five years.

Rationalisation of school places

232 Directions to bring forward proposals to remedy excessive provision

- (1) Where the Secretary of State is of the opinion that the provision for primary or secondary education in maintained schools in the area of any local education authority is excessive, then, for the purpose of remedying the excess—
 - (a) he may by an order under this paragraph direct the local education authority to exercise their powers to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools, and
 - (b) in the case of any voluntary school in the area, he may by an order under this paragraph direct the governing body to exercise their powers to make proposals for the alteration of their school.
- (2) Where the Secretary of State is of the opinion that the provision for primary or secondary education in grant-maintained schools in the area of any local education authority is excessive and an order under section 12(1) of this Act applies to the area, he may by an order under this subsection direct the funding authority to exercise their powers to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools for the purpose of remedying the excess.
- (3) An order under subsection (1) or (2) above shall—
 - (a) require the proposals to be published or, as the case may be, notice of the proposals to be served not later than such date as may be specified in the order, and
 - (b) require the proposals to apply such principles in giving effect to the direction as may be specified in the order.
- (4) An order under subsection (1)(a) or (2) above may not require the proposals to relate to any named school.

233 Directions to bring forward proposals for additional provision in maintained schools

- (1) The powers conferred by subsection (2) below are exercisable where—
 - (a) an order under section 12(1)(b) of this Act applies to the area of a local education authority, and
 - (b) the Secretary of State is of the opinion that the schools providing relevant education which are available for the area are not sufficient for the purposes of section 8 of the Education Act 1944 and that additional provision for relevant education should be made in maintained schools in the area.
- (2) The Secretary of State may—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) by an order under this paragraph direct the local education authority to exercise their powers to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools, and
- (b) in the case of any voluntary school in the area, by an order under this paragraph direct the governing body to exercise their powers to make proposals for the alteration of their school,

in the case of any such order with a view to securing that provision is made for such additional number of pupils in the area as may be specified in the order.

- (3) An order under subsection (2) above shall—
 - (a) require the proposals to be published or, as the case may be, notice of the proposals to be served not later than such date as may be specified in the order, and
 - (b) require the proposals to apply such principles in giving effect to the direction as may be specified in the order.
- (4) An order under subsection (2)(a) above may not require the proposals to relate to any named school.
- (5) Paragraph 7 of Schedule 2 to this Act does not apply in relation to the implementation of any proposals under section 12 of the Education Act 1980 where the Secretary of State has made an order under subsection (2) above.

234 Publication of proposals by the Secretary of State

- (1) Where—
 - (a) the Secretary of State has in relation to the area of any local education authority made an order under section 232(1) or (2) of this Act directing the local education authority, the funding authority or the governing body of a voluntary school to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools or, as the case may be, for the alteration of their school, and
 - (b) the time allowed under the order, and under any other order under that section relating to that area, for the publication of the proposals or, as the case may be, the service of notice of the proposals has expired,

he may make in such manner as may be prescribed any such proposals as might have been made in accordance with the order or orders relating to that area by the person or persons to whom the directions were given.
- (2) Proposals made under this section shall—
 - (a) include particulars of the proposed time or times of implementation of the proposals, and
 - (b) except where they are proposals to cease to maintain or discontinue any school or relate to a special school—
 - (i) include particulars of the number of pupils proposed to be admitted to the school to which the proposals relate in each relevant age group in the first school year in relation to which the proposals have been wholly implemented, and
 - (ii) if, in the case of a grant-maintained school, pupils are proposed to be admitted for nursery education, give the prescribed information.

- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2)(b) above admission to a maintained school for nursery education shall be disregarded; and section 155(4) to (6) of this Act applies for the purposes of that subsection as it applies for the purposes of Part II of this Act.
- (4) Proposals made under this section shall be accompanied by a statement which—
 - (a) describes any effect the implementation of the proposals would have on provision at the school for pupils who have special educational needs, and
 - (b) explains the effect of subsection (5) below.
- (5) Within the period of one month beginning with the date on which the proposals are made, objections to the proposals may be made by any of the following—
 - (a) if the proposals affect the provision of education to which section 2(1) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 applies, the appropriate further education funding council,
 - (b) any ten or more local government electors for the area,
 - (c) the governing body of any school affected by the proposals and, in the case of a voluntary school, the person or persons who are named in the school's instrument of government as being entitled to appoint foundation governors (within the meaning of the Education Act 1944), and
 - (d) any local education authority concerned.
- (6) Where—
 - (a) an order under section 12 of this Act applies to the area of a local education authority, and
 - (b) the Secretary of State makes proposals under this section which affect the provision of relevant education in the area,the funding authority shall be included among the persons who may submit objections to the proposals.
- (7) The reference in subsection (5) above to the date on which the proposals are made is to the date on which the prescribed requirements in respect of the proposals are satisfied.

235 Public inquiry into proposals

- (1) This section applies where in relation to the area of any local education authority the Secretary of State has made proposals under section 234 of this Act, otherwise than in pursuance of section 236(1) of this Act, which he has not withdrawn.
- (2) If objections have been made under section 234(5) of this Act within the period allowed under that subsection, then, unless all objections so made have been withdrawn in writing within that period, the Secretary of State shall cause a local inquiry to be held to consider his proposals, any proposals he refers to the inquiry and any objections.
- (3) Any proposals referred to a local inquiry under this section require the approval of the Secretary of State (if they would not require such approval apart from this subsection).
- (4) Where the Secretary of State has a duty to cause a local inquiry to be held under this section, he shall refer to the inquiry any proposals—
 - (a) made by him in relation to the area of the local education authority (and not withdrawn) but in respect of which he is not required under this section to cause a local inquiry to be held,

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) made by the local education authority, or made in relation to the area by the funding authority, in the exercise of their powers to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools (and not withdrawn), or
- (c) made by the governing body of any voluntary school in the area in exercise of their powers to make proposals for the alteration of their school (and not withdrawn),

which are not determined before he causes the inquiry to be held and appear to him to be related to the proposals made under section 234 of this Act in respect of which he is required under this section to cause the inquiry to be held.

- (5) Subsection (4) above does not require the Secretary of State to refer any proposals to the inquiry if, before he causes the inquiry to be held, he forms the opinion that the proposals ought to be implemented unless, before the proceedings on the inquiry are concluded or (if earlier) the proposals are determined, he subsequently forms a different opinion.
- (6) It shall not be open to the inquiry to question the principles specified in the order under section 232 or 233 of this Act.
- (7) Section 250(2) to (5) of the Local Government Act 1972 (giving evidence at and defraying costs of inquiries) applies to inquiries held under this section.
- (8) References in this section to the determination of any proposals are to any determination whether or not to approve, adopt or implement the proposals under section 12 or 13 of the Education Act 1980, Part II of this Act or section 184 of this Act.

236 Adoption of proposals and approval of related proposals

- (1) Where the Secretary of State has made proposals under section 234 of this Act in respect of which he is required to cause a local inquiry to be held, he may when he has considered the report of the person appointed to hold the inquiry do one or more of the following—
 - (a) adopt, with or without modifications, or determine not to adopt the proposals or any other proposals made by him under that section which he referred to the inquiry,
 - (b) approve, with or without modifications, or reject any other proposals which he referred to the inquiry, and
 - (c) make any such further proposals under section 234 of this Act as might have been made in accordance with the order or orders relating to the area of the local education authority concerned by the person or persons to whom the directions were given.
- (2) Where the Secretary of State has made proposals under section 234 of this Act in respect of which he is not required to cause a local inquiry to be held and which he is not required to refer to such an inquiry, he may, after considering any objections made (and not withdrawn) under subsection (5) of that section within the period allowed under that subsection, adopt, with or without modifications, or determine not to adopt, the proposals.
- (3) Proposals adopted by the Secretary of State under this section shall have effect—
 - (a) if they relate to a maintained school, as if they had been—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (i) made by the local education authority under their powers to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools, or
 - (ii) in the case of a voluntary school, made by the governing body under their powers to make proposals for the alteration of their school, and approved by the Secretary of State under section 12 or 13 of the Education Act 1980 or, as the case may be, section 184 of this Act, and
 - (b) if they relate to a grant-maintained school, as if they had been made by the funding authority under those powers and approved by the Secretary of State under Part II of this Act or, as the case may be, section 184 of this Act;
- and the provisions of the Education Act 1980, or Part II or section 185 of this Act, relating to the approval of particulars of premises or proposed premises of schools shall have effect accordingly.

237 Supplementary provisions

- (1) An order under section 232 or 233 of this Act may not require any significant change to be made in the religious character of a voluntary school.
- (2) Where the governing body of a voluntary school make any proposals in pursuance of an order under section 232 or 233 of this Act—
 - (a) the person or persons who are named in the school's instrument of government as being entitled to appoint foundation governors (within the meaning of the Education Act 1944) shall be included among the persons who may submit objections to the proposals, and
 - (b) the local education authority shall re-imburse any expenditure reasonably incurred by the governing body in making the proposals.
- (3) Proposals made in pursuance of an order under section 232 of this Act may not be withdrawn without the consent of the Secretary of State and such consent may be given on such conditions (if any) as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- (4) Where—
 - (a) proposals made by the governing body of a voluntary school in pursuance of an order under section 232 or 233 of this Act are approved, or
 - (b) proposals adopted by the Secretary of State under section 236 of this Act have effect as mentioned in subsection (3)(a)(ii) of that section,then, notwithstanding anything in section 13(5) of the Education Act 1980, the local education authority shall defray the cost of implementing the proposals.
- (5) Notwithstanding anything in section 23 of this Act, a county or voluntary school is not eligible for grant-maintained status—
 - (a) if the local education authority have made any proposals in pursuance of an order under section 232 of this Act to cease to maintain the school which have not been withdrawn and no determination whether or not to approve or implement the proposals has been made under section 12 of the Education Act 1980 or section 236 of this Act, or
 - (b) if the Secretary of State has made any proposals under section 234 of this Act for the local education authority to cease to maintain the school which have not been withdrawn and no determination whether or not to adopt the proposals has been made under section 236 of this Act.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (6) Section 273(4) and (5) of this Act does not apply in relation to any proposals under section 12(1)(d) or 13(1)(b) of the Education Act 1980 made in pursuance of an order under section 232 of this Act.
- (7) In sections 232 to 236 of this Act, “powers to make proposals for the alteration of their school”, in relation to the governing body of a voluntary school, means their powers to publish proposals under section 13(1)(b) of the Education Act 1980.
- (8) In sections 232 to 236 of this Act—
 - (a) “powers to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools” means—
 - (i) in relation to the local education authority, all or any of the powers to publish proposals under section 12 of the Education Act 1980,
 - (ii) in relation to the funding authority, all or any of the powers to publish proposals under sections 48, 97 or 105 of this Act, and
 - (iii) in relation to either authority, the power to serve notice of proposals under section 183 of this Act,
 - (b) references to maintained schools include maintained special schools established in hospitals, and
 - (c) references to grant-maintained schools include grant-maintained special schools.

Incorporation of governing bodies

238 Incorporation of governing bodies

- (1) A governing body constituted in pursuance of Part I of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (county, voluntary and maintained special schools) on or after the appointed day shall be constituted as a body corporate.
- (2) A governing body so constituted before that day shall, as constituted on that day, become on that day a body corporate.
- (3) On the incorporation of a governing body by virtue of subsection (2) above, any property, rights or liabilities attributable to the governing body immediately before incorporation shall be transferred to, and by virtue of this section vest in, the body corporate.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3) above, property, rights or liabilities are attributable to a governing body if—
 - (a) in the case of any land or other property, it was held by or on behalf of any persons as members or former members of the governing body, and
 - (b) in the case of rights or liabilities, they were acquired or incurred by or on behalf of any such persons,
 and are so held or, as the case may be, they subsist immediately before the incorporation of the governing body.
- (5) A governing body incorporated by virtue of this section shall be known as “The governing body of ...” with the addition of the name of the school.
- (6) The application of the seal of any such governing body must be authenticated by the signature—

- (a) of the chairman of the governing body, or
 - (b) of some other member authorised either generally or specially by the governing body to act for that purpose,together with the signature of any other member.
- (7) Every document purporting to be an instrument made or issued by or on behalf of any such governing body and—
 - (a) to be duly executed under the seal of the governing body, or
 - (b) to be signed or executed by a person authorised by the governing body to act in that behalf,shall be received in evidence and be treated, without further proof, as being so made or issued unless the contrary is shown.
- (8) References in subsections (1) and (2) above to a governing body do not include a temporary governing body constituted under arrangements made under that Act.
- (9) Schedule 13 to this Act (provisions supplementary to this section and section 239 of this Act) shall have effect.
- (10) In this and that section and that Schedule, “appointed day” means the day appointed under section 308(3) of this Act for the commencement of this section.

239 Powers of incorporated governing bodies

- (1) A governing body incorporated by virtue of section 238 of this Act may do anything (including in particular the things referred to in the following subsections) which appears to them to be necessary or expedient for the purpose of or in connection with the exercise of any of the functions conferred on them under or in pursuance of any enactment.
- (2) A governing body so incorporated may—
 - (a) acquire and dispose of land and other property,
 - (b) enter into contracts, other than contracts of employment,
 - (c) invest any sums not immediately required for the purposes of carrying on any activities they have power to carry on,
 - (d) accept gifts of money, land and other property and apply it, or hold and administer it on trust, for any of those purposes, and
 - (e) do anything incidental to the conduct of the school.
- (3) Subsections (1) and (2) above have effect subject to—
 - (a) any provisions of the instrument of government or articles of government for the school, and
 - (b) if the school has a delegated budget (defined in section 33(6)(b) of the Education Reform Act 1988), any provisions of the scheme under that section which covers the school.
- (4) The governing body so incorporated of an aided school may enter into contracts for the employment of teachers and other staff, subject to any provisions of the articles of government for the school other than any provisions for the time being excluded by section 45(2) of that Act (aided schools having delegated budgets) from applying to the school.

The curriculum

240 National Curriculum

- (1) In section 2 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (the National Curriculum) in subsection (2)(c) (arrangements for assessing pupils at or near the end of each key stage) for “at or near the end” there is substituted “in respect”.

- (2) After section 3(5) of that Act (power of head teacher to determine key stage for a particular pupil) there is inserted—

“(5A) If at any time, in the case of a pupil of compulsory school age, subsection (3) above does not, apart from this subsection, apply to determine the period within which that time falls, that subsection shall have effect as if—

- (a) in the case of paragraphs (a) to (c), any reference to the school year in which the majority of pupils in that pupil’s class attained a particular age were a reference to the school year in which that pupil attained that age, and
- (b) in the case of paragraph (d), the period were a period beginning at the same time as the school year in which he attained the age of fifteen and ending when he ceases to be of compulsory school age.”

- (3) At the end of section 3(6) of that Act (interpretation) there is added—

“and

“school year” means the period beginning with the first school term to begin after July and ending with the beginning of the next school year.”

- (4) In section 4 of that Act (duty to establish National Curriculum by order) for subsection (5) there is substituted—

“(5) An order under subsection (2)(c) above—

- (a) may confer or impose such functions on the governing body and the head teacher and (in the case of maintained schools) on the local education authority as appear to the Secretary of State to be required, and
- (b) may specify any such assessment arrangements as may for the time being be made by a person specified in the order.

- (6) Provision shall be made for determining the extent to which any assessment arrangements, and the implementation of the arrangements, achieve the purpose for which the arrangements are made; and such provision may be made by or under the order specifying the arrangements or (where the order specifies the person making the arrangements) in the arrangements themselves.

- (7) The duties that may be imposed by virtue of subsection (5)(a) above include, in relation to persons exercising power in pursuance of provision made by virtue of subsection (6) above, the duty to permit them—

- (a) to enter the premises of the school,
- (b) to observe the implementation of the arrangements, and
- (c) to inspect, and take copies of, documents and other articles.

- (8) An order under subsection (2)(c) above may authorise the making of such provisions giving full effect to or otherwise supplementing the provisions made by the order (other than provisions conferring or imposing functions as mentioned in subsection (5)(a) above) as appear to the Secretary of State to be expedient; and any provision made under such an order shall, on being published by Her Majesty's Stationery Office, have effect for the purposes of this Chapter as if made by the order."
- (5) In section 117 of that Act (obligation to enter pupils for prescribed examinations), at the end of subsection (2) (exceptions) there is added "but this subsection does not apply to an examination which is part of the assessment arrangements for key stage four and applies in the case of that pupil; and in this subsection, in relation to that pupil, "assessment arrangements" has the meaning given by section 2(2)(c) of this Act and "key stage four" means the period referred to in section 3(3)(d) of this Act".

241 Sex education

- (1) In section 2(1) of the Education Reform Act 1988 (content of curriculum), after "school" in paragraph (a) there is inserted—
- "(aa) in the case of a secondary school, provision for sex education for all registered pupils at the school;
 - (ab) in the case of a special school, provision for sex education for all registered pupils at the school who are provided with secondary education".
- (2) In section 114(1) of the Education Act 1944 (interpretation), after the definition of "Senior pupil" there is inserted—
- ""Sex education" includes education about—
 - (a) Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome and Human Immunodeficiency Virus, and
 - (b) any other sexually transmitted disease".
- (3) After section 17 of the Education Reform Act 1988 there is inserted—

"17A Exemption from sex education

If the parent of any pupil in attendance at any maintained school requests that he may be wholly or partly excused from receiving sex education at the school, the pupil shall, except so far as such education is comprised in the National Curriculum, be so excused accordingly until the request is withdrawn."

- (4) The Secretary of State shall so exercise the power conferred by section 4 of that Act to revise the National Curriculum as to secure that the subject of science does not include—
- (a) Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome and Human Immunodeficiency Virus,
 - (b) any other sexually transmitted disease, or
 - (c) aspects of human sexual behaviour, other than biological aspects,
- and sections 20, 21 and 232(4) of that Act (procedure for making orders), and section 242 of this Act, shall not apply to any order made only for the purposes of this subsection.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (5) The governing body of every maintained or grant-maintained school and, in relation to pupils who are provided with secondary education, the governing body of every maintained special school shall—
- (a) make, and keep up to date, a separate written statement of their policy with regard to the provision of sex education, and
 - (b) make copies of the statement available for inspection (at all reasonable times) by parents of registered pupils at the school and provide a copy of the statement free of charge to any such parent who asks for one.
- (6) In relation to any county, or controlled, secondary school, and in relation to any pupils who are provided with secondary education in a maintained special school, section 18 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (policy for curriculum in county etc. schools), shall have effect with the omission of subsections (2) and (6)(c)(i) and of the references to the matters mentioned in subsection (2) of that section.

242 Temporary procedure for making certain orders

- (1) Where this section applies in relation to any proposals by the Secretary of State to make an order under section 3(4) or 4(2)(a) or (b) of the Education Reform Act 1988 (orders relating to foundation subjects, key stages and attainment targets), or regulations under section 17 of that Act (exceptions from National Curriculum)—
- (a) the Secretary of State shall make such arrangements for consultation about the proposals as he considers appropriate, and
 - (b) sections 20 and 21 of that Act (procedure for representations in relation to England and Wales) shall not apply.
- (2) Where, at any time after the commencement of this section and before 1st September 1996, the Secretary of State proposes to make such an order or such regulations, this section applies in relation to the proposals unless, at any time before the commencement of this section—
- (a) they were referred under section 20(2) of that Act, or
 - (b) notice of them was given under section 21(2) of that Act.
- (3) Where the Secretary of State proposes, at any time on or after 1st September 1996, to make such an order or such regulations, this section applies in relation to the proposals if arrangements under this section for consultation about the proposals were made before that date.

243 Procedure for making certain orders: Wales

In section 21 of the Education Reform Act 1988, for subsections (2) and (3) there are substituted—

- “(2) The Secretary of State shall refer the proposal to the Curriculum Council for Wales (in this section referred to as “the Council”) and give to it directions as to the time within which it is to report to him.
- (3) The Council shall give notice of the proposal—
- (a) to such associations of local education authorities, bodies representing the interests of school governing bodies and organisations representing school teachers as appear to it to be concerned; and

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) to any other persons with whom consultation appears to it to be desirable;
and afford them a reasonable opportunity of submitting evidence and representations as to the issues arising.
- (3A) The report of the Council to the Secretary of State shall contain—
 - (a) a summary of the views expressed during the consultations;
 - (b) its recommendations as to the proposal; and
 - (c) such other advice relating to the proposal as it thinks fit;and the Council shall, after submitting its report to the Secretary of State, arrange for the report to be published.
- (3B) Where the Council has reported to the Secretary of State, he shall—
 - (a) publish in such manner as, in his opinion, is likely to bring them to the notice of persons having a special interest in education—
 - (i) a draft of the proposed order or regulations and any associated document; and
 - (ii) a statement explaining his reasons for any failure to give effect to the recommendations of the Council;
 - (b) send copies of the documents mentioned in paragraph (a) above to the Council and to each of the persons consulted by the Council; and
 - (c) allow a period of not less than one month for the submission of evidence and representations with respect to the issues arising.”

*Replacement of the National Curriculum Council and
the School Examinations and Assessment Council*

244 The School Curriculum and Assessment Authority

- (1) There shall be a body corporate known as the School Curriculum and Assessment Authority.
- (2) The Authority shall consist of not less than ten nor more than fifteen members appointed by the Secretary of State.
- (3) Of the members of the Authority, the Secretary of State—
 - (a) shall appoint one as chairman, and
 - (b) may appoint another as deputy chairman.
- (4) The Secretary of State shall include among the members of the Authority persons who appear to him—
 - (a) to have experience of, and to have shown capacity in, the provision of education, or
 - (b) to have held, and to have shown capacity in, any position carrying responsibility for the provision of education.
- (5) Where in carrying out his functions under subsection (4) above the Secretary of State proposes to appoint a person who appears to him to have experience of, and to have shown capacity in, the provision of education, he shall have regard to the desirability of including persons engaged in the provision of primary or secondary education.
- (6) Schedule 14 to this Act shall have effect with respect to the Authority.

245 Functions

- (1) The School Curriculum and Assessment Authority shall, so far as relevant for the purposes of advancing education—
 - (a) keep under review all aspects of the curriculum for maintained schools in England and all aspects of school examinations and assessment,
 - (b) advise the Secretary of State on such matters concerned with the curriculum for maintained schools in England or with school examinations and assessment as he may refer to them or as they may see fit,
 - (c) advise the Secretary of State on, and, if so requested by him, assist him to carry out, programmes of research and development for purposes connected with the curriculum for maintained schools in England or with school examinations and assessment,
 - (d) publish and disseminate, and assist in the publication and dissemination of, information relating to the curriculum for maintained schools in England or to school examinations and assessment,
 - (e) make arrangements with appropriate bodies for auditing the quality of assessments made in pursuance of assessment arrangements,
 - (f) advise the Secretary of State on the exercise of his powers under section 5(1) of the Education Reform Act 1988 (approval of external qualifications),
 - (g) advise the Secretary of State on such other matters connected with the provision of education in maintained schools in England, or in non-maintained special schools there, as the Secretary of State may specify by order, and
 - (h) carry out such ancillary activities as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (2) The Authority shall supply the Secretary of State with such reports and other information with respect to the carrying out of their functions as he may require.
- (3) In carrying out their functions, the Authority shall—
 - (a) comply with any directions given by the Secretary of State,
 - (b) act in accordance with any plans approved by him, and
 - (c) so far as relevant, have regard to the requirements of section 1 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (requirements which curriculum for maintained school must satisfy).
- (4) For the purposes of paragraph (h) of subsection (1) above, activities are ancillary activities in relation to the Authority if the Secretary of State considers it is appropriate for the Authority to carry out those activities for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying out by the Authority of any of their other functions under that subsection.
- (5) In this section—

“assessment arrangements” and “maintained school” have the same meanings as in Chapter I of Part I of the Education Reform Act 1988, and

“non-maintained special school” means a special school not maintained by a local education authority.

246 Dissolution of existing Councils

The National Curriculum Council and the School Examinations and Assessment Council are hereby dissolved.

247 Transfer of property

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order provide for the transfer to the School Curriculum and Assessment Authority of—
 - (a) such of the land or other property of the National Curriculum Council or the School Examinations and Assessment Council, and
 - (b) such of the rights and liabilities of either of those councils (other than rights and liabilities arising under contracts of employment),as, in his opinion, need to be transferred to enable the Authority to carry out their functions properly.
- (2) No order under subsection (1) above may be made after the end of the period of six months beginning with the day on which section 244 of this Act comes into force.
- (3) Any order under subsection (1) above made before the day on which section 244 of this Act comes into force shall come into force on that day.
- (4) Where immediately after the end of the period within which an order under subsection (1) above may be made any property, rights or liabilities remain vested in the National Curriculum Council or the School Examinations and Assessment Council, they shall forthwith vest in the Secretary of State.
- (5) The Secretary of State may by order provide that there shall be substituted for the period mentioned in subsection (2) above such shorter period as he may specify in the order, being a period ending no earlier than the day on which the order comes into force.

248 Transfer of staff

- (1) This section applies to any person who—
 - (a) is employed by the National Curriculum Council or School Examinations and Assessment Council immediately before section 244 of this Act comes into force, and
 - (b) is designated as respects the School Curriculum and Assessment Authority by order of the Secretary of State.
- (2) A contract of employment between a person to whom this section applies and the National Curriculum Council or School Examinations and Assessment Council shall have effect, from the day on which the order under subsection (1)(b) above comes into force, as if originally made between him and the Authority.
- (3) Without prejudice to subsection (2) above—
 - (a) all the rights, powers, duties and liabilities of the National Curriculum Council or School Examinations and Assessment Council under or in connection with a contract to which that subsection applies shall by virtue of that subsection be transferred to the Authority on the day on which the order under subsection (1)(b) above comes into force, and
 - (b) anything done before that day by or in relation to the National Curriculum Council or School Examinations and Assessment Council in respect of that contract or the employee shall be deemed from that day to have been done by or in relation to the Authority.
- (4) Subsections (2) and (3) above are without prejudice to any right of an employee to terminate his contract of employment if a substantial change is made to his detriment

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

in his working conditions, but no such right shall arise by reason only of the change in employer effected by subsection (2) above.

- (5) An order under subsection (1)(b) above may designate a person either individually or as falling within a class or description of employee.
- (6) No order under subsection (1)(b) above may be made after the end of the period of six months beginning with the day on which section 244 of this Act comes into force.
- (7) Any order under subsection (1)(b) above made before the day on which section 244 of this Act comes into force shall come into force on that day.
- (8) The Secretary of State may by order provide that there shall be substituted for the period mentioned in subsection (6) above such shorter period as he may specify in the order, being a period ending no earlier than the day on which the order comes into force.

Curriculum Council for Wales

249 Finance

In Schedule 2 to the Education Reform Act 1988, for paragraph 11 there is substituted—

“Finance

- 11 (1) The Secretary of State may make grants to the Council of such amount as he thinks fit in respect of expenses incurred or to be incurred by it in carrying out its functions.
- (2) The payment of grant under this paragraph shall be subject to the fulfilment of such conditions as the Secretary of State may determine.
- (3) The Secretary of State may also impose such requirements as he thinks fit in connection with the payment of grant under this paragraph.”

250 Proceedings

In that Schedule, there is inserted before paragraph 14—

- “13A (1) The chairman of the School Curriculum and Assessment Authority, or a representative of his, shall be entitled to attend and take part in deliberations (but not in decisions) at meetings of the Council or any committee of the Council.
- (2) The Council shall provide the chairman of the School Curriculum and Assessment Authority with such copies of any documents distributed to members of the Council or of any such committee as he may require.”

251 Accounts

- (1) In that Schedule, paragraph 18 (accounts) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(b), “in such form as the Secretary of State may direct with the approval of the Treasury” is omitted.

(3) After sub-paragraph (1) there is inserted—

“(1A) The statement of accounts shall comply with any directions given by the Secretary of State with the approval of the Treasury as to—

- (a) the information to be contained in it;
- (b) the manner in which the information contained in it is to be presented; or
- (c) the methods and principles according to which the statement is to be prepared.”

252 Transfer of functions in relation to Wales

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order transfer any function of the School Curriculum and Assessment Authority in relation to Wales to the body established by section 14(1)(b) of the Education Reform Act 1988 (Curriculum Council for Wales).
- (2) An order under this section may contain such supplementary, incidental, consequential or transitional provisions as the Secretary of State thinks fit, including provisions—
 - (a) for the transfer of staff; and
 - (b) for the transfer of property, rights and liabilities held, enjoyed or incurred in connection with any function transferred.

253 Change of name

- (1) In section 14(1)(b) of the Education Reform Act 1988, for “the Curriculum Council for Wales” there is substituted “Awdurdod Cwricwlwm ac Asesu Cymru or the Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales”.
- (2) Schedule 15 to this Act (amendments consequential on the change of name) shall have effect.

Religious education

254 Duty to reconvene conference on agreed syllabus of religious education

- (1) Within six months of the commencement of this section the local education authority shall reconvene any conference—
 - (a) which they have convened for the purpose set out in paragraph 1 or 12 of the Fifth Schedule to the Education Act 1944 (procedure for preparing and bringing into operation an agreed syllabus of religious education) or section 11(8) of the Education Reform Act 1988 (standing advisory councils on religious education), and
 - (b) to which subsection (2) below applies.
- (2) This subsection applies to any conference—
 - (a) which has not made a recommendation under paragraph 9 or 13(2) of that Schedule, and
 - (b) in respect of which the authority have not made a report under paragraph 10 or 13(4) of that Schedule.

- (3) Where a conference is convened (or reconvened) after the commencement of this section, paragraph 2 of that Schedule shall have effect as if at the end of the proviso there were inserted “and the number of persons appointed to any committee under that sub-paragraph to represent each denomination or religion required to be represented shall, so far as consistent with the efficient discharge of the committee’s functions, reflect broadly the proportionate strength of that denomination or religion in the area”.

255 Duty to constitute new standing advisory council on religious education

- (1) Within six months of the commencement of this section the local education authority shall constitute a new council under section 11 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (standing advisory councils on religious education).
- (2) For the purposes of the constitution required by subsection (1) above (and of any subsequent constitution) that section shall have effect as if at the end of subsection (5) there were inserted “and the number of members appointed to any representative group under paragraph (a) of that subsection to represent each denomination or religion required to be represented shall, so far as consistent with the efficient discharge of the group’s functions, reflect broadly the proportionate strength of that denomination or religion in the area”.

256 Reconsideration of agreed syllabus

- (1) For paragraph 12 of the Fifth Schedule to the Education Act 1944 (reconsideration of agreed syllabus) there is substituted—
- “12 (1) A local education authority shall cause a conference to be convened at any time required by sub-paragraph (2) or (3) of this paragraph for the purpose of reconsidering any agreed syllabus for the time being adopted by them which was adopted before the appointed day.
- (2) Where they adopted the syllabus before 29th September 1988, they shall convene a conference within the period of one year beginning with the appointed day.
- (3) Where they adopted the syllabus on or after 29th September 1988, they shall convene a conference—
- (a) within the period of five years beginning with the date on which they adopted it, or
- (b) within the period of one year beginning with the appointed day, whichever is the later.
- (4) A local education authority shall from time to time cause further conferences to be convened for the purpose of reconsidering any agreed syllabus for the time being adopted by them (whether adopted before, on or after the appointed day); and no such conference shall be convened later than the expiry of the period of five years beginning with the date on or after the appointed day on which—
- (a) the authority adopted the syllabus, or
- (b) the authority gave effect to a recommendation under paragraph 13 of this Schedule that the syllabus should continue to be the agreed syllabus.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (5) In this paragraph—
 - (a) “appointed day” means the day appointed for the commencement of section 256 of the Education Act 1993, and
 - (b) references to the date on which a local education authority adopt a syllabus include a reference to the date which the Secretary of State directs is to be the date from which a syllabus prepared under paragraph 11 of this Schedule is to be deemed to be the agreed syllabus.”
- (2) In paragraph 13 of that Schedule (procedure on reconsideration of agreed syllabus)—
 - (a) in sub-paragraph (2), after “agreed syllabus” there is inserted “and it appears to the local education authority that the syllabus reflects the fact that the religious traditions in Great Britain are in the main Christian while taking account of the teaching and practices of the other principal religions represented in Great Britain”, and
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (4)—
 - (i) “either” is omitted, and
 - (ii) after “unanimous agreement” there is inserted—
 - “(aa) the conference unanimously recommend that the existing syllabus should continue to be the agreed syllabus but the local education authority consider that sub-paragraph (2) of this paragraph prevents them from giving effect to the recommendation”.

257 Power of Secretary of State to direct standing advisory council to revoke determination or discharge duty

After section 12 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (determination by advisory councils) there is inserted—

“12A Power of Secretary of State to direct advisory council to revoke determination or discharge duty

- (1) Where the Secretary of State is satisfied, either on complaint by any person or otherwise, that any standing advisory council on religious education—
 - (a) have acted, or are proposing to act, unreasonably in determining for the purposes of subsection (1) or (5) of section 12 of this Act whether it is appropriate for the requirement for Christian collective worship to apply in the case of any school or any class or description of pupils at a school, or
 - (b) have failed to discharge any duty imposed under that section,he may give the council such directions as to the revocation of the determination or the withdrawal of the proposed determination or (as the case may be) the discharge of the duty as appear to him to be expedient; and the council shall comply with the directions.
- (2) Directions under subsection (1) above may provide for the making by the council of a new determination to take effect in place of the determination or proposed determination to be revoked or withdrawn by them.

- (3) In this section, “requirement for Christian collective worship” means the requirement imposed by section 7(1) of this Act or, as the case may be, section 138(2) of the Education Act 1993.”

258 Access to meetings and documents of standing advisory council and conference on agreed syllabus of religious education

- (1) This section applies to—
- (a) any conference convened for the purpose set out in paragraph 1 or 12 of the Fifth Schedule to the Education Act 1944 (procedure for preparing and bringing into operation an agreed syllabus of religious education) or section 11(8) of the Education Reform Act 1988 (standing advisory councils on religious education), and
 - (b) any standing advisory council constituted under that section of that Act.
- (2) Regulations may make provision—
- (a) for meetings of conferences or councils to be, subject to prescribed exceptions, open to members of the public,
 - (b) requiring conferences or councils to give notice, in such manner as may be prescribed, of the time and place of such meetings, and
 - (c) requiring conferences or councils, at such time or times as may be prescribed,
 - (i) to make available for inspection, or
 - (ii) to provide on payment of such fee as they think fit (not exceeding the cost of supply),
 copies of the agendas and reports for such meetings to members of the public.
- (3) Regulations made under subsection (2) above may apply to—
- (a) committees appointed by local education authorities under paragraph 2 of the Fifth Schedule to the Education Act 1944,
 - (b) sub-committees appointed by conferences under that Schedule, and
 - (c) representative groups on councils appointed under section 12(4) of the Education Reform Act 1988,
- as they apply to conferences and councils.

259 Inspection of religious education

- (1) Section 13 of the Education (Schools) Act 1992 (religious education) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsections (1) to (3) there is substituted—
- “(1) It shall be the duty of the governing body of—
- (a) any voluntary school, or
 - (b) any grant-maintained school,
- in which denominational education is given to any pupils to secure that that education is inspected under this section.
- (2) It shall be the duty of the governing body of—
- (a) any voluntary school, or
 - (b) any grant-maintained school falling within subsection (3) below,

to secure that the content of the school's collective worship is inspected under this section.

- (3) A grant-maintained school falls within this subsection if—
- (a) it was a voluntary school immediately before it became grant-maintained,
 - (b) it was established in pursuance of proposals published under section 49 of the Education Act 1993 and either any trust deed relating to the school or the statement required by paragraph 8 of Schedule 3 to that Act makes provision as to the religious education for pupils at the school, or
 - (c) it is a school in respect of which proposals for the required provision for religious education to be provision for religious education in accordance with the tenets of a particular religion or religious denomination are approved under section 98 of that Act.

(3A) In this section—

- (a) “denominational education”, in relation to a school, means any religious education which—
 - (i) is required by section 2(1)(a) of the Education Reform Act 1988 to be included in the school's basic curriculum, but
 - (ii) is not required by any enactment to be given in accordance with an agreed syllabus,
- (b) “the required provision for religious education” means the provision for religious education for pupils at the school which is required as mentioned in paragraph (a)(i) above, and
- (c) references to collective worship are references to collective worship required by section 6 of that Act.”

(3) For subsection (7) there is substituted—

- “(7) It shall be the general duty of a person conducting an inspection under this section—
- (a) if the inspection is conducted by virtue of subsection (1) above, to report on the quality of the denominational education provided by the school for pupils to whom denominational education is given by the school, or
 - (b) if the inspection is conducted by virtue of subsection (2) above, to report on the content of the school's collective worship,
- and any such person may report on the spiritual, moral, social and cultural development of pupils at the school.”

Admissions and exclusions

260 Arrangements for admissions

- (1) In this section “co-ordinated arrangements for admissions”, in relation to any two or more maintained or grant-maintained schools, means arrangements under an agreement to which this section applies for the purpose of co-ordinating arrangements for admitting pupils to the schools concerned.
- (2) Co-ordinated arrangements for admissions, if—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) contained in an agreement approved by the Secretary of State under this section, or
 - (b) made in pursuance of a scheme under this section,

and any provision contained in any other arrangements for admitting pupils to any maintained or grant-maintained school in pursuance of a scheme under this section, shall have effect in the case of any school to which they relate notwithstanding anything in section 6(2) of the Education Act 1980 (parental preferences) or in the instrument or articles of government for the school.
- (3) This section applies to an agreement made in relation to any two or more maintained or grant-maintained schools to which each authority responsible for determining the arrangements for admitting pupils to any of the schools is a party, whether or not any local education authority for any area in which any of the schools are situated is also a party.
- (4) The Secretary of State may make a scheme under this section for the purpose of co-ordinating arrangements, or assisting in the co-ordination of arrangements, for admitting pupils to any maintained or grant-maintained schools to which the scheme applies.
- (5) A scheme under this section may in particular require each authority responsible for determining the arrangements for admitting pupils to any of the schools to which the scheme applies—
 - (a) to include in their arrangements for admitting pupils such provisions as may be required by the scheme,
 - (b) to secure the making in accordance with the scheme of an agreement for the purpose of co-ordinating arrangements for admitting pupils to the schools to which the scheme applies, or
 - (c) to secure the modification in accordance with the scheme of any such agreement to which they are party.
- (6) Before making a scheme under this section the Secretary of State shall, in respect of each school which appears to him to be a school to which the scheme will apply, consult—
 - (a) the governing body, and
 - (b) in the case of any maintained school, the local education authority.
- (7) A scheme under this section may apply to—
 - (a) all schools which for the time being are maintained or grant-maintained schools,
 - (b) all schools which for the time being are maintained or grant-maintained schools falling within any category of such schools specified in the scheme, or
 - (c) any maintained or grant-maintained school so specified.
- (8) Section 111 of the Education Act 1944 (revocation and variation) applies to a scheme under this section as it applies to directions under that Act.

261 Restrictions on power to exclude pupils

- (1) The head teacher of any school maintained by a local education authority or grant-maintained school may not—
 - (a) exclude a pupil from the school for an indefinite period, or

- (b) so exercise the power to exclude a pupil from the school for one or more fixed periods that the pupil is so excluded for more than fifteen school days in any one term.
- (2) Subsection (1) above has effect, in the case of a school having articles of government, notwithstanding anything in the articles.
- (3) Where, on the day on which this section comes into force, a pupil stands excluded from such a school for an indefinite period—
 - (a) he shall be treated as if he had been excluded from the school by the head teacher until the expiry of the period of one month beginning with that day and as if, in the case of a county, controlled or maintained special school, the local education authority had been so informed, and
 - (b) any direction given before that day—
 - (i) under section 24(c)(ii) or 25(d)(ii) of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (pupil to be reinstated within period specified in direction), or
 - (ii) by a committee of the governing body of a grant-maintained school to the head teacher under a corresponding provision of the articles of government,which specifies a period ending later than the expiry of the period of one month beginning with that day shall have effect as if it specified a period ending with that expiry.
- (4) Subsection (1)(b) above does not apply to any exclusion of a pupil which has taken effect before the day on which this section comes into force; but in exercising on or after that day the power referred to in that subsection, account shall be taken of any school days on which the pupil was excluded from the school in the same term in pursuance of one or more exclusions which took effect before that day.
- (5) In this section, “grant-maintained school” includes a grant-maintained special school.

262 Exclusion of pupils: funding

- (1) Subsection (2) below applies where a pupil is permanently excluded from any school maintained by a local education authority or any grant-maintained school and, in the financial year in which the exclusion first takes effect—
 - (a) he is subsequently provided with education at a school maintained by a local education authority, education otherwise than at school provided by such an authority or education at a grant-maintained school, and
 - (b) the person accountable for that education (referred to below as “the new provider”) is not the same as the person accountable for the education provided for him immediately before his exclusion (referred to below as “the former provider”).
- (2) The former provider shall pay to the new provider an amount determined in accordance with regulations as the appropriate amount of funding to be transferred to the new provider in respect of that pupil for that financial year.
- (3) Every local education authority shall, where any scheme made by them under section 33 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (financing county and voluntary schools) does not make the provision required by subsection (4) below, exercise their powers to revise the scheme so that it makes such provision.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (4) The provision required by this subsection, in relation to a local education authority, is—
- (a) provision requiring the authority, where a pupil is permanently excluded from a school and the exclusion first takes effect in a financial year in which the school is required to be covered by the scheme, to reduce the school's budget share for that year by an amount determined in accordance with regulations as the appropriate amount of funding in respect of that pupil for that year to be subtracted from the school's budget share, and
 - (b) provision requiring the authority, where a pupil admitted to a school in a financial year in which the school is required to be covered by the scheme has been permanently excluded from a school maintained by them or any other local education authority or any grant-maintained school and the exclusion (as well as the admission) first took effect in that year, to allocate for the purposes of the school in that year an amount determined in accordance with regulations as the appropriate amount of funding in respect of that pupil for that year to be allocated for those purposes.
- (5) Expressions used in subsection (4) above and in Chapter III of Part I of the Education Reform Act 1988 have the same meaning in that subsection as in that Chapter.
- (6) Subject to subsection (7) below, for the purposes of this section—
- (a) the local education authority are accountable for education provided at any school maintained by them or education provided by them otherwise than at school, and
 - (b) the governing body are accountable for education provided at a grant-maintained school.
- (7) Where a pupil is permanently excluded from any school maintained by a local education authority or grant-maintained school and, in the financial year in which the exclusion first takes effect, the following events subsequently occur—
- (a) he is first provided with education for which a different local education authority or, in the case of exclusion from a grant-maintained school, any local education authority are accountable (referred to below as “the first new provider”) and which is provided in a pupil referral unit or otherwise than at school, and, at any time afterwards
 - (b) he is provided with education at a grant-maintained school or for which a local education authority other than the first new provider are accountable,
- then, in relation to the education mentioned in paragraph (b) above, the first new provider is to be treated as accountable for the education provided for the pupil immediately before the exclusion first took effect.
- (8) Any dispute as to whether any local education authority or governing body of a grant-maintained school are entitled to be paid any amount under this section by any such other person shall be determined by the Secretary of State.
- (9) For the purposes of this section the permanent exclusion of a pupil does not take effect until—
- (a) any review under the articles of government of the decision to exclude him has been completed, and
 - (b) either any time for appealing under section 26 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 or those articles has expired without such an appeal being made or such an appeal has been finally concluded.

- (10) In this section, “grant-maintained school” includes a grant-maintained special school.

Information

263 Provision of information about CTCs and CCTAs

In section 16(7) of the Education (Schools) Act 1992 (power to require governing body of school or local education authority to provide information) after “grant-maintained school” there is inserted—

“(aa) the proprietor of any city technology college or city college for the technology of the arts”.

264 Distribution of information about certain schools by other schools

- (1) Where the governing body of any school providing primary education receive a request which—

- (a) is made by the governing body of any school providing secondary education, and
- (b) relates to the distribution of information about the school providing secondary education to parents of pupils at the school providing primary education without charge to those parents,

the governing body of that school shall secure that the request is treated no less favourably (whether as to services provided or as to the terms on which they are provided) than any such request made by the governing body of any other school providing secondary education.

- (2) In this section, “school” means any maintained school, grant-maintained school or grant-maintained special school.

265 Distribution of information about further education institutions by schools

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations require—

- (a) the governing body of any maintained, grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school which provides secondary education, and
- (b) the proprietor of any city technology college or city college for the technology of the arts,

to provide such persons as may be prescribed with such categories of information falling within subsection (2) below as may be prescribed.

- (2) Information falls within this subsection if it is—

- (a) published under section 50 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (information with respect to institutions within the further education sector), and
- (b) made available to governing bodies and proprietors for distribution.

- (3) Information provided under subsection (1) above shall be provided in such form and manner as may be prescribed.

Appeal committees

266 Lay members for admission appeal committees

Schedule 16 to this Act (introduction of lay members into certain committees hearing appeals against admission decisions) shall have effect.

267 Duty to advertise for lay members for appeal committees

- (1) This section applies—
 - (a) in the case of an appeal committee constituted in accordance with Part I of Schedule 2 to the Education Act 1980, to the local education authority or governing body of an aided or special agreement school required by section 7 of that Act or section 26 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 to make arrangements for enabling appeals to be made to that committee, and
 - (b) in the case of an appeal committee constituted for the purposes of paragraph 5(1) of Schedule 6 to this Act, to the governing body of a grant-maintained school required by the articles of government for the school to make arrangements for appeals to that committee.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by regulations require any local education authority or governing body to which this section applies—
 - (a) to advertise, in such manner and at such times as may be prescribed, for persons eligible to be lay members of any appeal committee required to be constituted for the purposes of arrangements made by that authority or body to apply to the authority or body for appointment as such members, and
 - (b) in appointing persons as such members, to consider any persons eligible to be so appointed who have applied to the authority or body in response to an advertisement placed in pursuance of paragraph (a) above.

268 Indemnity for legal costs and expenses of members of appeal committees

- (1) This section applies—
 - (a) in the case of an appeal committee constituted in accordance with Part I of Schedule 2 to the Education Act 1980, to the local education authority or governing body of an aided or special agreement school required by section 7 of that Act or section 26 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 to make arrangements for enabling appeals to be made to that committee, and
 - (b) in the case of an appeal committee constituted for the purposes of paragraph 5(1) of Schedule 6 to this Act, to the governing body of a grant-maintained school required by the articles of government for the school to make arrangements for appeals to that committee.
- (2) It shall be the duty of any local education authority or governing body to which this section applies to indemnify the members of any appeal committee required to be constituted for the purposes of arrangements made by that authority or body against any reasonable legal costs and expenses reasonably incurred by those members in connection with any decision or action taken by them in good faith in pursuance of their functions as members of that committee.

269 Investigation by Local Commissioner of decisions of certain appeal committees

In section 25(5) of the Local Government Act 1974 (certain appeal committees to be subject to investigation by Local Commissioner)—

- (a) for “paragraph 1” there is substituted “paragraphs 1 and 2”, and
- (b) at the end there is added “or for the purposes of paragraph 5 of Schedule 6 to the Education Act 1993”.

Admission arrangements for aided etc. schools

270 Arrangements under section 6(6) of the Education Act 1980: modification or replacement

In section 6 of the Education Act 1980 (under subsection (6) of which governors of an aided or special agreement school may require the local education authority to enter into admission arrangements which override the duty to comply with any expressed parental preference) there is inserted at the end—

- “(7) If one of the parties to arrangements under subsection (6) above proposes that the arrangements should be modified or replaced by substitute arrangements but the other party does not agree, the party making the proposal may refer the matter to the Secretary of State.
- (8) On a reference under subsection (7) above, the Secretary of State may—
 - (a) direct that the arrangements shall remain as they are;
 - (b) direct that they shall be modified or replaced as proposed; or
 - (c) direct that they shall be modified in such other manner, or replaced by such other substitute arrangements, as may be specified in the direction.
- (9) Where the Secretary of State directs as mentioned in subsection (8)(b) or (c) above, the modification or, as the case may be, the substitute arrangements shall have effect, from such date as may be specified in the direction, as if agreed between the parties.”

Sponsor governors

271 Sponsor governors for aided secondary schools

- (1) After section 4 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (governing bodies for aided etc. schools) there is inserted—

“4A Sponsor governors for aided secondary schools

- (1) The instrument of government for any aided secondary school shall, if a direction under this section so requires—
 - (a) name as a sponsor of the school a person specified in the direction, and
 - (b) provide for the governing body of the school to include such number of governors appointed by the sponsor, not exceeding four, as is so specified.
- (2) A direction under this section in respect of a school, other than a direction under subsection (4) or (5) below—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (a) may only be given at the request, or with the consent, of the governing body, and
 - (b) may make provision (including the modification of any provision made by or under this Act) as to the time by which a new instrument of government is to be made and the consent and consultation which is to be required before it is made.
 - (3) A direction under this section varying or revoking a previous direction—
 - (a) may only be made after consulting the governing body, and
 - (b) may make provision (including the modification of any provision made by or under this Act) as to the time by which a new instrument of government is to be made and the consent and consultation which is to be required before it is made.
 - (4) Where proposals approved under section 13 of the Education Act 1980 (establishment and alteration of voluntary schools)—
 - (a) provide for a secondary school to be maintained by the local education authority as a voluntary school,
 - (b) name a person as a sponsor of the school, and
 - (c) provide for the governing body of the school to include a specified number of governors, not exceeding four, appointed by the sponsor,

the Secretary of State shall, if he makes an order under section 15 of the Education Act 1944 (classification of schools) directing that the school be an aided school, give a direction under this section for the purpose of implementing the proposals.
 - (5) Where an order under section 54 of this Act directs that a secondary school be an aided school and the proposals published by the governing body under that section—
 - (a) name a person as a sponsor of the school, and
 - (b) provide for the governing body of the school to include a specified number of governors, not exceeding four, appointed by the sponsor,

the Secretary of State shall give a direction under this section for the purpose of implementing the proposals.
 - (6) Where the instrument of government for any aided secondary school names two or more persons as sponsors of the school—
 - (a) the number of governors appointed under the instrument by virtue of this section may not exceed four, and
 - (b) the instrument may not provide for any of those governors to be appointed by two or more sponsors acting jointly.
 - (7) Where in pursuance of this section the instrument of government for a school names a person as a sponsor of the school, section 4(3)(a) of this Act shall have effect as if it required the instrument to provide for such number of foundation governors as will lead to their outnumbering the other governors by two.
 - (8) In this section “direction” means a direction contained in an order made by the Secretary of State; but section 63(1) of this Act shall not apply to the power of the Secretary of State to make orders under this section.”
- (2) At the end of section 8(2) of that Act (term of office) there is added “or in the case of governors appointed by a person named in the instrument as a sponsor of the school,

for such term (not being less than five nor more than seven years) as may be specified in the instrument.”

(3) In section 9 of that Act (grouping)—

(a) after subsection (1) there is inserted—

“(1A) A local education authority may not make such a resolution if the instrument of government of any of the schools names a person as a sponsor of the school unless all the schools are secondary schools”,
and

(b) in subsection (7)(b) after “such school” there is inserted “but the instrument of government does not name any person as a sponsor of the school

Proposals for alteration etc. of schools eligible for grant-maintained status

272 Power of governing body of county school to propose change of character etc

(1) This section applies where—

- (a) the governing body of a county school (referred to in this section as the “school proposed for grant-maintained status”) have published proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status which have not been withdrawn or determined,
- (b) the local education authority have published proposals for the purpose mentioned in section 12(1)(d) of the Education Act 1980 (alteration, etc. of county school) in respect of one or more schools in the area, and
- (c) the governing body of the school proposed for grant-maintained status intend to make a significant change in the character, or significant enlargement of the premises, of the school, being a change or enlargement to be made for the purpose of ensuring consistency in the provision made in the area of the local education authority if the proposals made by the authority are implemented.

(2) The governing body of the school proposed for grant-maintained status may publish in such manner as may be required by regulations proposals for a significant change in the character, or significant enlargement of the premises, of the school for the purpose mentioned in subsection (1)(c) above.

(3) Chapter VII of Part II of this Act shall apply in relation to proposals published under this section as it applies in relation to proposals published under section 96 of this Act but—

- (a) as if the governing body of the school proposed for grant-maintained status were the governing body of a grant-maintained school, and
- (b) with the modifications in subsections (4) and (5) below.

(4) The particulars of the proposals shall not give as the time or any of the times of implementation of the proposals a time earlier than the date of implementation of the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status.

(5) The statement accompanying the proposals shall (in addition to the matters referred to in section 96(5) of this Act)—

- (a) state that the proposals are published in connection with the proposed acquisition of grant-maintained status,
- (b) state the circumstances in which the governing body are authorised under this section to publish such proposals, and

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (c) describe the proposals published by the local education authority in connection with which the proposals under this section are published.
- (6) Expressions used in this section or section 273 of this Act and in Part II of this Act have the same meaning as in that Part.

273 Power to make and deal with proposals in the case of schools eligible for grant-maintained status

- (1) Before formulating in respect of any school which is eligible for grant-maintained status any proposals for a purpose mentioned in section 12(1)(c) (ceasing to maintain schools) or (d) of the Education Act 1980, the local education authority shall consult the governing body of the school.
- (2) No proposals shall be published under section 12 or 13 of that Act in respect of any school in respect of which proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status have been approved; and where the procedure for acquisition of grant-maintained status is pending (within the meaning of Chapter III of Part II of this Act) in respect of any voluntary school, no notice of the governing body's intention to discontinue the school may be served under section 14 of the Education Act 1944.
- (3) This subsection applies in any case where either—
 - (a) after proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status have been published in respect of any school which is eligible for grant-maintained status but before those proposals are withdrawn or determined proposals under section 12 or 13 of that Act in respect of the school are first published for the purposes of that section or proposals in respect of the school are published under section 272 of this Act, or
 - (b) after proposals under section 12 or 13 of that Act in respect of any such school have first been published for the purposes of that section but before those proposals are withdrawn or determined the governing body of the school publish proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status for the school.
- (4) In any case where subsection (3) above applies—
 - (a) any proposals under section 12 of that Act shall require the approval of the Secretary of State where they would not do so apart from this subsection, and
 - (b) the Secretary of State shall consider the proposals under section 12 or 13 of that Act or section 272 of this Act and the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status together but shall not determine the proposals under section 12 or 13 of that Act or section 272 of this Act until he has made his determination with respect to the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status.
- (5) If in any case where subsection (3) above applies the Secretary of State approves the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status—
 - (a) where there are proposals under section 12 of that Act, he may approve them if they were made under subsection (1)(d) of that section and the governing body incorporated under section 34 of this Act give their consent, but shall otherwise reject them,
 - (b) where there are proposals under section 13 of that Act, he may approve them if they were made for the purpose referred to in section 272(1)(c) of this Act, but shall otherwise reject them, and
 - (c) where there are proposals under section 272 of this Act, he may approve them.

- (6) If in any case where subsection (5) above applies proposals under section 12 or 13 of that Act are approved, the proposals shall be treated for the purposes of Part II of this Act as if they had been published under section 96, and approved under section 98, of this Act; and section 99 of this Act shall apply accordingly.
- (7) If subsection (3) above applies in a case where—
- (a) there are proposals under section 272 of this Act, and
 - (b) the Secretary of State rejects the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status,
- the Secretary of State shall reject the proposals under section 272 of this Act.

Local management of schools

274 Revision of schemes for financing schools maintained by local education authorities

- (1) For section 34(4) of the Education Reform Act 1988 (duty to consult before preparing a scheme) there is substituted—
- “(4) Before preparing such a scheme a local education authority shall consult—
- (a) the governing body and the head teacher of every county, voluntary or special school maintained by the authority,
 - (b) the governing body of every grant-maintained school in the area of the authority, and
 - (c) the governing body of every grant-maintained special school which—
 - (i) is established under section 183 of the Education Act 1993 in the authority’s area, or
 - (ii) before becoming a grant-maintained special school was a special school maintained by the authority,
- but the Secretary of State may, by notice in writing to the authority, dispense with the duty imposed under paragraphs (b) and (c) above in respect of such schools, or class or description of schools, as are specified in the notice.”
- (2) For section 35 of that Act (replacement and variation of schemes) there is substituted—

“35 Revision of schemes

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this section, a local education authority may revise the whole or any part of any scheme made by them under section 33 of this Act.
- (2) Section 34(2) and (3) of this Act shall apply where the local education authority are preparing any revision under this section as they apply where they are preparing a scheme under section 33 of this Act.
- (3) Where the local education authority propose to make a significant variation of the scheme—
- (a) they shall first consult every governing body and head teacher whom they are obliged to consult under section 34(4) of this Act, and
 - (b) they shall then submit a copy of their proposals to the Secretary of State for his approval,

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

and where the proposals are so submitted section 34(5) of this Act shall apply to the scheme as revised as it applies to a scheme prepared under section 33.

- (4) A revision which does not make a significant variation of the scheme is referred to in this section as a “minor revision”; and the Secretary of State may by order specify what descriptions of variation are to be regarded as significant for the purposes of this section.
 - (5) Where a local education authority propose to revise a scheme and the revision is in their opinion a minor revision, the authority shall give the Secretary of State notice in writing of their proposal, giving brief particulars of the nature of the revision proposed to be made.
 - (6) In any such case the authority shall, if so required by the Secretary of State before the end of the period of two months beginning with the date on which he receives notice under subsection (5) above of the authority’s proposal, send to him a copy of the scheme as proposed to be revised; and it shall be for the Secretary of State to determine whether or not any revision is a minor revision.
 - (7) The Secretary of State may by a direction revise the whole or any part of a scheme made under section 33 of this Act, as from such date as may be specified in the direction.
 - (8) Before giving such a direction the Secretary of State shall consult the local education authority concerned and such other persons as he thinks fit.”
- (3) In section 40(2) of that Act (initial implementation), after “the scheme” there is inserted “as first made under section 33 of this Act”.
- (4) In section 51(2)(a)(i) (interpretation), after “Act” there is inserted “as from time to time revised under section 35 of this Act”.
- (5) In the case of a scheme made before the commencement of this section, subsection (3) above shall not have effect so as to alter the date which, immediately before commencement, is the date by reference to which the beginning of the initial period of the scheme is determined to an earlier date.

275 Publication and auditing of financial statements

- (1) In section 42 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (publication of schemes and financial statements etc.)—
 - (a) in subsection (4), paragraphs (f) to (i) are omitted,
 - (b) subsection (5)(b) is omitted,
 - (c) in subsection (6) after “with respect to” there is inserted—
 - “(aa) the planned financial provision in that year specified in the statement prepared by the authority under subsection (3) above”, and
 - (d) for subsection (8) there is substituted—
 - “(8) The authority shall furnish—
 - (a) the governing body of each school required to be covered by the scheme in any financial year, and
 - (b) the governing bodies of such grant-maintained schools in the authority’s area and grant-maintained special schools

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

mentioned in section 34(4)(c) of this Act as may be prescribed,

with a copy of each statement prepared by the authority under this section in relation to that year or, in such circumstances as may be prescribed, with such part or parts of it as may be prescribed.”

(2) After that section there is inserted—

“42A Certification of statements by Audit Commission

- (1) This section applies where in the case of any local education authority the authority’s financial provision for county and voluntary schools is subject to regulation by a scheme.
 - (2) Any such local education authority shall, if directed to do so by the Secretary of State, require the Audit Commission for Local Authorities and the National Health Service in England and Wales to make arrangements in accordance with section 29(1)(d) of the Local Government Finance Act 1982 for certifying such statement or statements prepared by the authority under section 42 of this Act as may be specified in the directions; and any statement under that section shall be treated for the purposes of section 29(1)(d) of that Act as a return by the authority.
 - (3) The arrangements made by the Audit Commission in pursuance of subsection (2) above shall include arrangements for sending a copy of any such statement or statements as so certified to the Secretary of State.
 - (4) Directions given under subsection (2) above may relate to any local education authority or to local education authorities generally or to any class or description of such authorities.”
- (3) In Schedule 4 to that Act (financing of new schools) in paragraph 2, sub-paragraphs (3)(b) and (c) and (4)(b) and (c) are omitted.

276 Application of schemes to special schools

For section 43 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (application of schemes to special schools) there is substituted—

“43 Application of schemes to special schools

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations require or authorise schemes to cover special schools maintained by local education authorities.
- (2) Sections 39(1) and (10) and 40 of this Act shall not apply to schools required to be covered by a scheme by virtue of regulations under subsection (1) above.
- (3) Regulations under subsection (1) above may require or authorise schemes to include provision for requiring the delegation by the local education authority concerned to the governing body of the school of the management of the school’s budget share for the year—
 - (a) in the case of all schools required to be covered by a scheme in any financial year by virtue of the regulations; or

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) in the case of such schools required to be covered by a scheme in any financial year by virtue of the regulations as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by regulations—
 - (a) make in any provisions of this Chapter such amendments as appear to him to be required in consequence of any provision made in regulations under subsection (1) above; and
 - (b) provide that any scheme shall have effect with such modifications as appear to him to be appropriate in consequence of any provision so made.”

School leaving date

277 Compulsory school age

- (1) Subsections (2) and (3) below apply to determine for the purposes of any enactment whether a person is of compulsory school age.
- (2) A person begins to be of compulsory school age when he attains the age of five years.
- (3) A person ceases to be of compulsory school age at the end of the day which is the school leaving date for any calendar year if—
 - (a) he attains the age of sixteen years after that day but before the beginning of the school year next following,
 - (b) he attains that age on that day, or
 - (c) subject to paragraph (a) above, if that day is the school leaving date next following his attaining that age.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by order determine the day in any calendar year which is to be the school leaving date for that year.

Local education authority finance

278 Grants for education support and training

- (1) Section 1 of the Education (Grants and Awards) Act 1984 (education support grants) is amended as follows.
- (2) For “education support grants” and “education support grant”, in each place where one of those expressions appears, there is substituted “grants for education support and training” or, as the case may be, “grant for education support and training”.
- (3) In subsection (3)(b) “not exceeding 70 per cent. of the expenditure so approved” is omitted.
- (4) After subsection (4) there is inserted—
 - “(4A) Conditions and requirements determined under subsection (4)(b) and (c) above may include conditions and requirements obliging the local education authority to delegate decisions about the spending of—
 - (a) grant for education support and training, and

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) amounts allocated by the authority to meet prescribed expenditure which is approved by the Secretary of State,
to such persons as may be determined by or in accordance with the regulations.”
- (5) In section 3 of that Act (regulations), subsections (2) and (5) and, in subsection (3), the words “not being regulations to which subsection (2) above applies” are omitted.
- (6) In section 50(1) of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (grants for teacher training, etc.)—
 - (a) for “local education authorities and other persons” there is substituted “persons other than local education authorities”, and
 - (b) for the words from the end of paragraph (a) to the end of the subsection there is substituted—
 - “and
 - (b) such other classes of person as may be prescribed”.

279 Inter-authority recoupment

- (1) In section 51 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (recoupment), for subsections (1) to (4) there is substituted—
 - “(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations provide, in relation to cases where any provision for education to which this section applies is made by a local education authority in respect of a person who belongs to the area of another such authority, for requiring or authorising the other authority to pay to the providing authority—
 - (a) such amount as the authorities may agree; or
 - (b) failing agreement, such amount as may be determined by or under the regulations.
 - (2) This section applies to primary, secondary and further education and to part-time education for those who have not attained the age of five years.
 - (3) The regulations may provide for the amounts payable by one authority to another—
 - (a) to reflect the whole or any part of the average costs incurred by local education authorities in the provision of education (whether in England and Wales as a whole or in any particular area or areas); and
 - (b) to be based on figures for average costs determined by such body or bodies representing local education authorities, or on such other figures relating to costs so incurred, as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
 - (4) The regulations may provide for the amounts so payable, in such cases as may be specified in or determined in accordance with the regulations, to be such amounts as may be determined by the Secretary of State.”
- (2) In section 63 of that Act (orders and regulations)—
 - (a) in subsection (2) after “section” there is inserted “51 or”, and
 - (b) after that subsection there is inserted—

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

“(2A) No regulations may be made under section 51 of this Act unless a draft has been laid before and approved by resolution of each House of Parliament.”

Charges in maintained schools

280 Musical instrument tuition

In section 106(3) of the Education Reform Act 1988 (exceptions from the prohibition of charges in maintained schools) for paragraph (a) there is substituted—

“(a) tuition in playing any musical instrument, where the tuition is provided either individually or to a group of no more than four pupils; or”.

Assistance for voluntary schools

281 Grants by Secretary of State in respect of aided and special agreement schools

- (1) The Secretary of State may—
 - (a) in the case of any aided school or special agreement school, or
 - (b) where proposals have been approved under section 13 of the Education Act 1980 (establishment etc. of voluntary schools) for a school or proposed school to be maintained as a voluntary school and the Secretary of State has made an order under section 15 of the Education Act 1944 (classification of schools) directing that the school be an aided school,

make grants to the governing body in respect of expenditure falling within subsection (2) below incurred by them.
- (2) The expenditure referred to in subsection (1) above is expenditure in respect of the provision, alteration or repair of premises or equipment for the school or proposed school.
- (3) The amount of any grant paid under this section to the governing body in respect of any such expenditure—
 - (a) shall not exceed 85 per cent. of the expenditure, and
 - (b) in the case of any prescribed class or description of such expenditure, shall be such as may be determined in accordance with regulations.
- (4) The times at which, and the manner in which, payments are made in respect of grant under this section shall be such as may be determined from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (5) Without prejudice to any other duty of his, the Secretary of State shall, in performing functions relating to the exercise of the power under this section to make grants in respect of expenditure on—
 - (a) such alterations to school buildings as are referred to in section 15(3)(a) of the Education Act 1944 (alterations required by local education authority in order to comply with prescribed standards), and
 - (b) the repair of school buildings,

give priority to paying grant in respect of expenditure which is necessary for the performance by governing bodies of their duties; and the amount of any grant paid

in the exercise of that power in respect of such expenditure on the repair of school buildings shall be 85 per cent. of the expenditure.

- (6) A governing body to whom any payment is made in respect of grant under this section shall comply with such requirements determined by the Secretary of State as he may from time to time impose.
- (7) Such requirements—
 - (a) may be imposed on or at any time after the making of any payment by reference to which they are imposed, and
 - (b) may at any time be waived, removed or varied by the Secretary of State.
- (8) Such requirements may, in particular, if any conditions specified in the requirements are satisfied, require the payment to the Secretary of State of the whole or any part of the following amount.
- (9) That amount is—
 - (a) the amount of the payments made in respect of the grant under this section, or
 - (b) so much of the value of any premises or equipment in respect of which grant was paid under this section as is determined in accordance with the requirements to be properly attributable to the payment of such grant,whichever is the greater.
- (10) No such requirement as is referred to in subsection (8) above may be imposed where any payment is made in respect of grant under this section if—
 - (a) the grant is made in respect of the provision, alteration or repair of premises for a school or proposed school, and
 - (b) any freehold interest in the premises in respect of which the grant is made is, or is to be, held on trust for the purposes of the school.
- (11) No grant may be paid under this section—
 - (a) in respect of any expenses incurred in the provision of any premises which it is the duty of the local education authority to provide, or
 - (b) in the case of a special agreement school, in respect of expenses incurred in the execution of proposals to which the special agreement relates or of repairs or alterations for the execution of which provision is made by the agreement.
- (12) In relation to a proposed school, the references in this section to the governing body, in relation to any time before such a body are constituted, are to the persons who propose to establish the school; and where requirements are imposed in relation to grant paid under this section to such persons, the governing body, when they are constituted, as well as those persons shall comply with the requirements.
- (13) In this section “repair” does not include repair falling within section 15(3)(b) of the Education Act 1944 (repair for which governing body are not responsible).

282 Power of LEA to assist governors of aided or special agreement school

- (1) A local education authority may give to the governors of an aided or special agreement school such assistance as the authority think fit in relation to the carrying out by the governors of any obligation under—
 - (a) section 15(3)(a) of the Education Act 1944 (duty to defray certain maintenance expenses),

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (b) paragraph 2 of the First Schedule to the Education Act 1946 (duty to defray expenses of providing school buildings on site to which school transferred under section 16 of the Education Act 1944), or
 - (c) section 13(5) of the Education Act 1980 (duty to implement proposal to alter, etc. school).
- (2) In section 15 of the Education Act 1944, after subsection (4) there is inserted—
- “(4A) For the purposes of subsection (4) of this section, the governors of an aided school or a special agreement school shall not be regarded as unable to carry out their obligations under subsection (3)(a) of this section if they are able to carry them out with the benefit of assistance under section 282(1) of the Education Act 1993 (power of local education authority to give assistance).”
- (3) In section 90 of the Education Act 1944 (compulsory purchase of land by local education authority) after subsection (1) there is inserted—
- “(1A) The proviso in subsection (1) of this section shall not apply where the local education authority propose that expenditure to be incurred in connection with the purchase should ultimately be borne by them under section 282(1) of the Education Act 1993 (power of local education authority to give assistance).”
- (4) In paragraph 2 of the First Schedule to the Education Act 1946, the existing provision becomes sub-paragraph (1) and after that sub-paragraph there is inserted—
- “(2) For the purposes of paragraph (c) of sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph, the governors of an aided school or a special agreement school shall not be regarded as unable to carry out their obligations under this paragraph if they are able to carry them out with the benefit of assistance under section 282(1) of the Education Act 1993 (power of local education authority to give assistance).”

283 Power of LEA to assist promoters of voluntary school

A local education authority may give to persons required under section 13(5) of the Education Act 1980 to implement proposals involving the establishment of a school such assistance as the authority think fit in relation to the carrying out by those persons of their obligations under that provision.

284 Duty to convey interest in premises provided under section 282(1) or 283

- (1) Where assistance under section 282(1) or 283 of this Act consists of the provision of any premises for use for the purposes of a school, the local education authority shall convey their interest in the premises to the trustees of the school to be held on trust for the purposes of the school.
- (2) If any doubt or dispute arises as to the persons to whom a local education authority are required to make a conveyance under subsection (1) above, the conveyance shall be made to such persons as the Secretary of State thinks proper.
- (3) Where trustees make a disposal of an interest conveyed to them by a local education authority under subsection (1) above, they shall be liable to pay to that authority an amount equal to the net proceeds of the disposal.
- (4) In subsection (3) above—

“disposal” includes part disposal, and
“net proceeds”, in relation to a disposal, means the amount accruing on the disposal less any expenditure reasonably incurred for the purposes of making it.

285 Disapplication of section 123(2) of the Local Government Act 1972

Subsection (2) of section 123 of the Local Government Act 1972 (which prohibits a local authority from making a disposal of land under that section below market value without the consent of the Secretary of State) shall not apply in the case of a disposal—

- (a) to the governors of an aided or special agreement school, or
- (b) to persons proposing to establish a school which is proposed to be maintained by a local education authority as a voluntary school and to be an aided school.

286 Repeal of section 3(4) of the Education Act 1968

Section 3(4) of the Education Act 1968 (power of local education authority to provide, or assist in providing, temporary accommodation at voluntary school) shall cease to have effect.

Voluntary and grant-maintained schools: endowments

287 Religious educational trusts: adoption of statutory trusts

(1) This section applies to endowments which are—

- (a) regulated by an existing scheme under the Endowed Schools Acts 1869 to 1948 as applied by section 86(1) of the Education Act 1944 or by an order, whenever made, under section 2 of the Education Act 1973; and
- (b) held under any such scheme or order on trusts which provide for capital or income or both to be applicable for or in connection with—
 - (i) the provision of religious education at relevant schools, or relevant schools of any description (but not only at a particular school or schools) in a diocese or other geographical area; or
 - (ii) the provision of premises for relevant schools, or relevant schools of any description (but not only at a particular school or schools) at which religious education is or is to be provided in a diocese or other geographical area;

but this section does not apply to an endowment if or in so far as it constitutes a religious education fund.

(2) The trustees of any endowments to which this section applies may, by resolution complying with subsection (6) below, adopt the uniform statutory trusts as the trusts on which those endowments are to be held.

(3) The uniform statutory trusts are those set out in Schedule 17 to this Act.

(4) On the adoption by trustees of the uniform statutory trusts in respect of any endowments the scheme or order which regulates the endowments shall have effect as if the uniform statutory trusts are incorporated in the scheme or order to the exclusion of the corresponding provisions of the scheme or order.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (5) The trustees of two or more endowments which are held on the uniform statutory trusts may, by resolution complying with subsection (6) below, consolidate all or any of those endowments and, where they do so, the endowments shall be treated, for all purposes, as held for the purposes of a single charity.
- (6) For a resolution to comply with this subsection—
- (a) it must be passed by a simple majority of the trustees or, if the trustees are a body corporate or a company, by a simple majority of the members of the body corporate or an ordinary resolution of the company; and
 - (b) it must be recorded in the records of the decisions of the trustees affecting the endowments of the trust.
- (7) Where trustees pass a resolution under subsection (2) above it shall be their duty to send a copy of the resolution to the Secretary of State.
- (8) The uniform statutory trusts applicable to endowments to which this section applies shall not affect—
- (a) the rights of any person under the third proviso to section 2 of the School Sites Act 1841, section 86(3) of the Education Act 1944 or section 1 of the Reverter of Sites Act 1987 (rights replacing certain reversionary interests in land); or
 - (b) the rights of any local education authority which have arisen or may arise under paragraph 7 or 8 of the First Schedule to the Education Act 1946 (rights in relation to school sites provided by such authorities);
- except in so far as any right falling within paragraph (a) above is extinguished by an order under section 2 of the Education Act 1973 made by virtue of section 5 of the Reverter of Sites Act 1987.
- (9) In this section—
- “company” means a company formed under the Companies Acts;
 - “the Companies Acts” means the Companies Act 1985, the Companies Act 1948 or any Act repealed by that Act of 1948;
 - “endowment” includes property not subject to any restriction on the expenditure of capital;
 - “existing” means in force on the day on which this section comes into force;
 - “provision”, in relation to premises, means provision by the purchase of a site, the erection of premises or the maintenance, improvement or enlargement of premises;
 - “relevant school” means a voluntary school or a grant-maintained school.
 - “religious education” means religious education in accordance with the tenets of a particular religion or religious denomination; and
 - “religious education fund” includes a Sunday school fund.
- (10) In Schedule 17 to this Act as incorporated in any scheme or order—
- “the area” means the diocese or other geographical area within which the trust assets may be applied under the scheme or order, as the case may be;
 - “relevant school” means a relevant school at which the religious education provided for in the scheme or order, as the case may be, is or is to be provided; and
 - “the relevant trust assets” means the endowments in respect of which the trustees have adopted the uniform statutory trusts, including the income derived therefrom.

288 Religious educational trusts: supplementary provision

- (1) Section 2 of the Education Act 1973 (special powers as to certain trusts for religious education) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (4), at the end (definition of “use for appropriate educational purposes”) there is inserted “including, in particular, but without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing words, use for any purpose specified in Schedule 17 to the Education Act 1993.”
- (3) In subsection (3), after “dwelling-house” there is inserted “and may consolidate any endowments to be dealt with by the scheme”.
- (4) After subsection (5) there is inserted—
“(5A) Where a scheme given effect under this section provides for the endowments dealt with by the order or any part of them to be used for the purposes specified in Schedule 17 to the Education Act 1993, any such scheme may provide for the endowments thereby dealt with or any part of them to be added to any existing endowment applicable for those purposes (whether it is so applicable by virtue of a scheme given effect under this section or otherwise).”

Voluntary and grant-maintained schools: teachers' pay and conditions

289 Employment of certain teachers: pay and conditions

After section 3 of the School Teachers' Pay and Conditions Act 1991 (special provisions as to grant-maintained schools) there is inserted—

“3A Special provisions for teachers on transfer of employment

- (1) This section applies where a school teacher employed to teach at an independent school—
 - (a) which becomes a county or voluntary school in pursuance of proposals published under section 12(1)(b) or, as the case may be, 13(1)(a) of the Education Act 1980, or
 - (b) in place of which a grant-maintained school is established in pursuance of proposals published under section 49 of the Education Act 1993, becomes employed (in the case of a county or voluntary school) by the local education authority or the governing body or (in the case of a grant-maintained school) by the governing body in accordance with the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 1981.
- (2) A pay and conditions order shall not apply to the statutory conditions of employment of such a teacher unless he gives notice in writing to the new employer that the order is to so apply.
- (3) Where the governing body of an aided school receive notice given under subsection (2) above, they shall inform the local education authority.”

Independent schools

290 Independent schools: employment of teachers etc

- (1) At the end of section 71 of the Education Act 1944 (independent schools: complaints) there is added—

“(4) If at any time the Secretary of State is satisfied that a person whose employment is prohibited or restricted by virtue of regulations under section 218(6) of the Education Reform Act 1988—

- (a) is employed in a registered or provisionally registered school in contravention of those regulations, or
- (b) is the proprietor of such a school,

he may order that the school be struck off the register or, as the case may be, that the Registrar is not to register the school.

- (5) In this section, and in sections 72 and 73 of this Act, “employee” means a person employed in work which brings him regularly into contact with persons who have not attained the age of nineteen years.”

- (2) In sections 71(1)(d) and (2), 72(2)(e), (3) and (4) and 73(3) of that Act, after “teacher” in each place where it occurs there is inserted “or other employee”.

- (3) In section 218 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (school etc. regulations)—

- (a) at the end of subsection (6)(b) “or” is omitted,
- (b) after subsection (6)(c) there is added “or
 - (d) by the proprietors of independent schools or at such schools as teachers or in any such work”, and
- (c) in subsection (12) after “section” there is inserted “other than in subsection (6)(d) above”.

291 Training for unqualified teachers in CTCs or CCTAs

In section 218 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (school etc. regulations), after subsection (2) there is inserted—

“(2A) The regulations may impose requirements on persons carrying on city technology colleges or city colleges for the technology of the arts as to the training and teaching experience of persons employed as teachers at such colleges who seek to become (in relation to schools) qualified teachers; and such requirements shall have effect for the purposes of section 105 of this Act as requirements of the agreements under which the colleges are maintained.”

292 Independent schools that are children’s homes

- (1) In section 63 of the Children Act 1989 (children not to be cared for and accommodated in unregistered children’s homes) for subsection (6) there is substituted—

“(6) An independent school is a children’s home at any time if at that time accommodation is provided for children at the school and either—

- (a) in each year that fell within the period of two years ending at that time accommodation was provided for more than three of the children

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

at the school, or under arrangements made by the proprietor of the school, for more than 295 days in that year, or

- (b) it is intended to provide accommodation for more than three of the children at the school, or under arrangements made by the proprietor of the school, for more than 295 days in any year,

unless the school is approved by the Secretary of State under section 189(1) of the Education Act 1993 (approval of independent schools for children with statements); and in this subsection “year” means a period of twelve months and “proprietor” has the same meaning as in the Education Act 1944.”

- (2) In section 70 of the Education Act 1944 (registration of independent schools) after subsection (4) there is inserted—

“(4A) Regulations made under subsection (4) above may in particular require the proprietor of a school to furnish the Registrar with such information as is required by the local authority for the purpose of determining whether the school is a children’s home (within the meaning of the Children Act 1989).”

293 Corporal punishment

- (1) Section 47 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (corporal punishment) is amended as follows.

- (2) In subsection (1), after “pupil” there is inserted “to whom this subsection applies” and after that subsection there is inserted—

“(1A) Where, in any proceedings, it is shown that corporal punishment has been given to a pupil by or on the authority of a member of the staff, giving the punishment cannot be justified if the punishment was inhuman or degrading.

(1B) In determining whether punishment is inhuman or degrading regard shall be had to all the circumstances of the case, including the reason for giving it, how soon after the event it is given, its nature, the manner and circumstances in which it is given, the persons involved and its mental and physical effects.”

- (3) In subsection (5)—

- (a) for the words preceding paragraph (a) there is substituted “Subsection (1) above applies to a pupil”, and
(b) for “but” there is substituted “and in this section “pupil””.

294 Corporal punishment: Scotland

- (1) Section 48A of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980 (corporal punishment) is amended as follows.

- (2) In subsection (1), after “pupil” there is inserted “to whom this subsection applies” and after that subsection there is inserted—

“(1A) Where, in any proceedings, it is shown that corporal punishment has been given to a pupil by or on the authority of a member of the staff, giving the punishment cannot be justified if the punishment was inhuman or degrading.

(1B) In determining whether punishment is inhuman or degrading regard shall be had to all the circumstances of the case, including the reason for giving it, how

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

soon after the event it is given, its nature, the manner and circumstances in which it is given, the persons involved and its mental and physical effects.”

- (3) In subsection (5) for the words preceding paragraph (a) there is substituted “In this section “pupil” means a person for whom education is provided at a school or for whom school education is provided by an education authority otherwise than at a school.

(5A) Subsection (1) above applies to a pupil-”

- (4) In subsection (8)(a) for “(5)(a)(iii)” there is substituted “(5A)(a)(iii)”.

Goods and services for grant-maintained or grant-maintained special schools

295 Provision of goods and services by local education authorities

- (1) Where the Secretary of State by order provides for this section to apply to a local education authority, the functions of the authority shall include the supply by the authority of such goods or services as may be specified in the order to the governing bodies of grant-maintained or grant-maintained special schools in such area as may be so specified.
- (2) The area specified in the order may not extend beyond the area which comprises—
- the area of the authority, and
 - the area of any other local education authority which shares any boundary with the authority.
- (3) The terms on which goods and services are supplied by a local education authority in the exercise of a function exercisable by virtue of this section shall be such as can reasonably be expected to secure that the full cost of exercising the function is recovered by the authority.
- (4) This section may not apply to a local education authority after the expiry of the period of two years beginning when it first applies to the authority.
- (5) This section is without prejudice to the generality of any other enactment conferring functions on local education authorities.

Local education authorities: education committees

296 Abolition of requirement to establish education committees

Section 6(2) of, and Part II of the First Schedule to, the Education Act 1944 (education committees) are omitted.

297 Power of Secretary of State to direct appointment of members of committees

- (1) Subsection (2) below applies to any local authorities which in accordance with section 102(1) of the Local Government Act 1972 have appointed any committees wholly or partly for the purpose of discharging any functions with respect to education conferred on them in their capacity as local education authorities.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by directions to any local authorities to which this subsection applies require every such committee, or any such committee of a

description specified in the direction, to include persons appointed, in accordance with the directions, for securing the representation on the committee of persons who appoint foundation governors for voluntary schools in the area for which the committee acts.

- (3) Subsection (4) below applies to any two or more local authorities which in accordance with section 102(1) of the Local Government Act 1972 have appointed any committees wholly or partly for the purpose of discharging any functions with respect to education conferred on them in their capacity as local education authorities.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by directions to any local authorities to which this subsection applies require every such committee, or any such committee of a description specified in the direction, to include persons appointed, in accordance with the directions, for securing the representation on the committee of persons who appoint foundation governors for voluntary schools in the area for which the committee acts or in such area as may be specified in the direction.
- (5) The power of the Secretary of State to give directions under subsection (2) or (4) above shall be exercisable in relation to any sub-committees which are—
 - (a) appointed by the authorities concerned or any such committee as is mentioned in that subsection, and
 - (b) so appointed wholly or partly for the purpose of discharging the authorities' functions as mentioned in that subsection or the committee's functions with respect to education,as it is exercisable in relation to the committees themselves.

Exceptional provision

298 Exceptional provision of education in school or elsewhere

- (1) Each local education authority shall make arrangements for the provision of suitable full-time or part-time education at school or otherwise than at school for those children of compulsory school age who, by reason of illness, exclusion from school or otherwise, may not for any period receive suitable education unless such arrangements are made for them.
- (2) A school established (whether before or after the commencement of this section) and maintained by a local education authority which—
 - (a) is specially organised to provide education for such children, and
 - (b) is not a county school or special school,shall be known as a “pupil referral unit”.
- (3) A local education authority may secure the provision of boarding accommodation at any pupil referral unit.
- (4) A local education authority may make arrangements for the provision of suitable full-time or part-time education otherwise than at school for those young persons who, by reason of illness, exclusion from school or otherwise, may not for any period receive suitable education unless such arrangements are made for them.
- (5) Section 9(2) of the Education Act 1944 (schools, other than nursery schools or special schools, established by LEAs to be known as county schools) shall have effect subject to subsection (2) above.

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

- (6) Any child for whom education is provided otherwise than at school in pursuance of this section, and any young person for whom full-time education is so provided in pursuance of this section, shall be treated for the purposes of the Education Acts as a pupil.
- (7) In this section “suitable education”, in relation to a child or young person, means efficient education suitable to his age, ability and aptitude and to any special educational needs he may have.
- (8) Schedule 18 to this Act (pupil referral units) shall have effect.

Supplementary

299 Stamp duty

- (1) Subject to subsection (5) below, stamp duty shall not be chargeable in respect of any transfer effected under or by virtue of any of the following sections of this Act: 38 (taken with section 198 of, and Schedule 10 to, the Education Reform Act 1988), 116(3) and (4), 226(1) and 247.
- (2) Subject to subsection (5) below, stamp duty shall not be chargeable in respect of any transfer to a funding authority under or by virtue of section 114 or 225(3) of this Act.
- (3) Subject to subsection (5) below, stamp duty shall not be chargeable in respect of any transfer to a local education authority—
 - (a) under or by virtue of section 114(1)(a), 132(2) or 225(3) of this Act of property which immediately after the transfer is held by the authority for the purposes of a maintained school, or
 - (b) under or by virtue of section 114(2) or 225(3) of this Act of property which immediately after the transfer is held by the authority for the purposes of a new county school.
- (4) Subject to subsection (5) below, stamp duty shall not be chargeable in respect of any transfer to the governing body of a grant-maintained school—
 - (a) under or by virtue of section 114(2) or 225(3) of this Act, or
 - (b) in the case of a school established under section 48(2) or 49 of this Act, from the funding authority.
- (5) No instrument (other than a statutory instrument) made or executed under or in pursuance of any of the provisions mentioned in subsections (1) to (4) above shall be treated as duly stamped unless it is stamped with the duty to which it would, but for this section (and, if applicable, section 129 of the Finance Act 1982), be liable or it has, in accordance with the provisions of section 12 of the Stamp Act 1891, been stamped with a particular stamp denoting that it is not chargeable with any duty or that it has been duly stamped.

300 Publication of guidance

- (1) The Secretary of State shall publish any guidance given by him for the purposes of any of the provisions mentioned in subsection (2) below in such manner as he thinks fit.
- (2) Those provisions are sections 28, 48, 49, 96(3), 97(4), 104(2), 105(4) and 184(1) of this Act.

301 Orders, regulations and directions

- (1) Any power of the Secretary of State to make orders or regulations under this Act (other than under any of the excepted provisions) shall be exercised by statutory instrument.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) above the excepted provisions are sections 9, 12, 39, 57, 70, 111, 136, 150, 191, 225, 232, 233 and 295, the definition of “Church in Wales school” in section 305 and paragraph 5 of Schedule 4 and paragraph 3 of Schedule 11.
- (3) A statutory instrument containing any order or regulations under this Act, other than under section 218, 220, 226, 247(5), 248(8) or 308, or paragraph 1(4) of Schedule 3, shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (4) No regulations shall be made under paragraph 1(4) of Schedule 3 to this Act unless a draft of the instrument containing the regulations has been laid before, and approved by resolution of, each House of Parliament.
- (5) Before making any regulations under section 56 of this Act, the Secretary of State shall consult—
 - (a) a body appearing to him to be representative of the Church of England,
 - (b) a body appearing to him to be representative of the Church in Wales, and
 - (c) a body appearing to him to be representative of the Roman Catholic Church,in matters relating to the provision of education in grant-maintained schools having foundation governors.
- (6) Orders or regulations under this Act made by the Secretary of State, and orders made by the funding authority under section 57, 70 or 136 of this Act or paragraph 5 of Schedule 4 to this Act, may make different provision for different cases, circumstances or areas and may contain such incidental, supplemental, saving or transitional provisions as the person making the order or regulations thinks fit.
- (7) Section 111 of the Education Act 1944 (revocation and variation) applies to directions given by the funding authority under this Act as it applies to directions given under that Act.

302 Financial provisions

There shall be paid out of money provided by Parliament—

- (a) any sums required for the payment by the Secretary of State of grants or other contributions under this Act,
- (b) any other expenses of the Secretary of State under this Act, and
- (c) any increase attributable to this Act in the sums so payable under any other enactment.

303 Construction of references to old and new law

- (1) Any reference, whether express or implied, in this Act or any other enactment, instrument or document to a provision of Parts II to IV of this Act is to be read, in relation to the times, circumstances or purposes in relation to which a corresponding provision of the repealed enactments had effect and so far as the nature of the reference permits, as including a reference to that corresponding provision.

- (2) Any reference, whether express or implied, in any enactment, instrument or document to a provision of the repealed enactments is to be read, in relation to the times, circumstances or purposes in relation to which a corresponding provision of Parts II to IV of this Act has effect and so far as the nature of the reference permits, as including a reference to that corresponding provision.
- (3) Any reference in any provision of the Education Acts to a funding authority, in relation to any function which, under a corresponding provision of the repealed enactments, was exercisable by the Secretary of State is to be read, in relation to the times, circumstances or purposes in relation to which the corresponding provision of the repealed enactments had effect and so far as the nature of the reference permits, as a reference to the Secretary of State.
- (4) In this section, “the repealed enactments” means the enactments specified in Part I of Schedule 21 to this Act.

304 Meaning of “school” in the Education Acts

- (1) In section 14(5) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (“school” means an institution providing primary or secondary education, whether or not it also provides further education, etc.) before “further education” there is inserted “part-time education suitable to the requirements of junior pupils”.
- (2) In the definition of “primary school” in section 114(1) of the Education Act 1944 (“primary school” means, subject to regulations under section 1 of the Education Act 1964, a school for providing primary education, whether or not it also provides further education) before “further education” there is inserted “part-time education suitable to the requirements of junior pupils or”.

305 General interpretation

- (1) In this Act—

“alterations”, in relation to any school premises, includes improvements, extensions and additions and “alter” shall be read accordingly,

“Church in Wales school” means a school in the Province of Wales in which the religious education provided is provided in accordance with the faith and practice of the Church in Wales and “appropriate diocesan authority”, in relation to such a school, means the Diocesan Board of Finance for the diocese of the Church in Wales in which the school is situated or such other person as the Secretary of State may by order designate in respect of that diocese,

“Church of England school” means a school in the Province of Canterbury or York in which the religious education provided is provided in accordance with the faith and practice of the Church of England and “appropriate diocesan authority”, in relation to such a school, means the Diocesan Board of Education for the diocese of the Church of England in which the school is situated,

“contract of employment”, “employee” and “employer” have the same meaning as in the Employment Protection (Consolidation) Act 1978, and “employed” means employed under a contract of employment,

“financial year” means a period of twelve months ending with 31st March,

“functions” includes powers and duties,

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

“land” includes buildings and other structures, land covered with water, and any interest in land,

“liability” includes obligation,

“local authority” means a county council, a district council, a London borough council or the Common Council of the City of London,

“local education authority”—

(a) in relation to a school maintained or proposed to be maintained by a local education authority, means that authority, and

(b) in relation to a grant-maintained school, means the local education authority for the area in which the school is situated,

“maintained school” means any county school or voluntary school and any maintained special school which is not established in a hospital,

“modifications” includes additions, alterations and omissions and “modify” shall be construed accordingly,

“prescribed” means prescribed by regulations,

“regulations” means regulations made by the Secretary of State, and

“Roman Catholic Church school” means a school in which the religious education provided is provided in accordance with the faith and practice of the Roman Catholic Church and “appropriate diocesan authority”, in relation to such a school, means the bishop of the Roman Catholic diocese in which the school is situated.

- (2) References in this Act to an interest in land include any easement, right or charge in, to or over land.
- (3) This Act shall be construed as one with the Education Act 1944; but where an expression is given for the purposes of any provision of this Act a meaning different from that given to it for the purposes of that Act, the meaning given for the purposes of that Act shall not apply for the purposes of that provision.
- (4) Before making an order in respect of any diocese in Wales in exercise of the power conferred by the definition of “appropriate diocesan authority”, the Secretary of State shall consult the bishop for the diocese.

306 Index

The expressions listed in the left-hand column below are respectively defined by or (as the case may be) are to be interpreted in accordance with the provisions of this Act listed in the right-hand column in relation to those expressions.

<i>Expression</i>	<i>Relevant provision</i>
admission for nursery education (in Part II)	section 155(5)
admission to school (in Part II)	section 155(6)
alterations	section 305(1)
appropriate appointing authority (in Part V)	section 204(2)
appropriate authority (in Part V)	section 204(2)

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

<i>Expression</i>	<i>Relevant provision</i>
appropriate diocesan authority (in relation to a Church of England, Church in Wales or Roman Catholic Church school)	section 305(1)
authority responsible for election arrangements under the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (in Chapter V of Part II)	section 80(2)
capital grants	sections 83(1) and 89
the chairmen's panel (in Part III)	section 177(2)
change in character of a school (in Part II)	section 103(1)
character of school (in Part II)	section 155(3)
child (in Part III)	section 156(5)
Church in Wales school	section 305(1)
Church of England school	section 305(1)
contract of employment	section 305(1)
core governor	section 122 and Schedule 8
date of publication of proposals (in Part II)	section 155(7)
date of implementation of proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status	section 37(2)
date of implementation of proposals for establishment of new grant-maintained school	section 54
dissolution date (in sections 111 to 116)	section 111(6)
education associations	section 218(2)
eligible governor (in Part II)	paragraph 4 of Schedule 7
employed, employee, employer	section 305(1)
employed to work at a school (in Part II)	section 155(9)
employed to work solely at a school (in Part II)	section 155(10)
financial year	section 305(1)
first governor (in Part II)	paragraphs 7 and 12 of Schedule 7
foundation governor (in Part II)	paragraphs 8 and 13 of Schedule 7
functions	section 305(1)
funding authority	section 5

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

<i>Expression</i>	<i>Relevant provision</i>
governing body (during transition to grant-maintained status)	sections 34(2)
governing body in liquidation (in sections 111 to 116)	section 111(3)
governor of an elected category (in Part II)	paragraph 3 of Schedule 7
grant-maintained school	sections 22(1) and 221(4)
grant-maintained school formerly conducted by a governing body in liquidation (in sections 111 to 116)	section 111(5)
grant-maintained special school	sections 182(3) and 187(3)(b)
grant regulations (in Chapter VI of Part II)	section 81(2)
incorporation date (in Part II)	sections 37(5) and 54
incorporation date (in Part III)	section 183(8) and 186(3)
initial governor (in Part II)	paragraph 2 of Schedule 7
inspection by a member of the Inspectorate (in Part V)	section 204(2)
interest in land	section 305(2)
land	section 305(1)
the lay panel (in Part III)	section 177(2)
learning difficulty	section 156(2)
liabilities incurred by a local education authority (in Part II)	section 155(8)
liability	section 305(1)
local authority	section 305(1)
local education authority	section 305(1)
maintained school	section 305(1)
maintained special school	section 182(2)
maintenance grants	sections 81(1) and 87(1)
member of the Inspectorate (in Part V)	section 204(2)
modifications	section 305(1)
new governing body (in Part II)	section 34(2)
parent governor (in Part II)	paragraphs 5 and 10 of Schedule 7
pending (in relation to proposals for the acquisition of grant-maintained status published under section 32)	section 32(4)

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

<i>Expression</i>	<i>Relevant provision</i>
pending (in relation to the procedure for acquisition of grant-maintained status)	section 40(1)
premises (in Part II)	section 155(1)
prescribed	section 305(1)
the President (in Part III)	section 177(2)
procedure applicable under the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (in Chapter V of Part II)	section 80(3)
promoters (in Part II)	section 49(1)
proposals (in Chapter VII of Part II)	section 103(3)
proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status	section 22(2)
proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school	section 22(2)
prospectively disqualified (in Chapter V of Part II)	section 80(4)
pupil referral unit	section 298(2)
the purposes of the school (in Chapter VI of Part II)	section 81(4)
reception class (in Part II)	section 155(1)
registered, in relation to parents or pupils, etc. (in Part II)	section 155(1)
regulations	section 305(1)
relevant age group (in Part II)	section 155(4)
relevant education	section 12(7)
relevant particulars (in relation to a proposed initial governor of a grant-maintained school)	section 37(4)
Roman Catholic Church school	section 305(1)
school attendance order	section 192(3)
school property (in sections 111 to 116)	section 111(4)
school which is eligible for grant-maintained status (in Part II)	section 23
schools the governing bodies of which are incorporated under Chapter II of Part II	section 221(5)
schools the governing bodies of which are incorporated under Chapter IV of Part II	section 221(7)

Status: This is the original version (as it was originally enacted).

<i>Expression</i>	<i>Relevant provision</i>
section 9 inspection (in Part V)	section 204(2)
section 105 loan liabilities (in sections 111 to 116)	section 111(7)
special educational needs	section 156(1)
special educational provision	section 156(4)
special measures (in Part V)	section 204(3)
special purpose grants	sections 82(1) and 88
special school	section 182(1)
sponsor governor (in Part II)	paragraphs 9 and 14 of Schedule 7
teacher governor (in Part II)	paragraphs 6 and 11 of Schedule 7
transfer date (in Part V)	section 220(2)
the Tribunal (in Part III)	section 177(1)

307 Amendments etc

- (1) Schedule 19 to this Act (which makes minor and consequential amendments) shall have effect.
- (2) Schedule 20 to this Act (which makes transitional provisions and savings) shall have effect.
- (3) The enactments mentioned in Schedule 21 to this Act are repealed to the extent mentioned in the third column.

308 Short title, commencement, etc

- (1) This Act may be cited as the Education Act 1993.
- (2) The Education Acts 1944 to 1992 and this Act may be cited together as the Education Acts 1944 to 1993 (referred to in this Act as “the Education Acts”).
- (3) This Act (other than sections 240, 301 to 303, 305, 306 and this section) shall come into force on such day as the Secretary of State may by order appoint and different days may be appointed for different provisions and for different purposes.
- (4) Subject to subsection (5) below, this Act extends to England and Wales only.
- (5) The amendment or repeal by this Act of an enactment which extends to Scotland or Northern Ireland extends also to Scotland or, as the case may be, Northern Ireland.